

Oxford **Word Skills**

UPPER-INTERMEDIATE – ADVANCED VOCABULARY

Ruth Gairns and **Stuart Redman**

*Learn to use the most important
words and phrases in English
topic by topic*

OXFORD

Great Clarendon Street, Oxford, OX2 6DP, United Kingdom

Oxford University Press is a department of the University of Oxford. It furthers the University's objective of excellence in research, scholarship, and education by publishing worldwide. Oxford is a registered trade mark of Oxford University Press in the UK and in certain other countries

© Oxford University Press 2020

The moral rights of the authors have been asserted

First published in 2020

2024 2023 2022 2021 2020

10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1

No unauthorized photocopying

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted, in any form or by any means, without the prior permission in writing of Oxford University Press, or as expressly permitted by law, by licence or under terms agreed with the appropriate reprographics rights organization. Enquiries concerning reproduction outside the scope of the above should be sent to the ELT Rights Department, Oxford University Press, at the address above

You must not circulate this work in any other form and you must impose this same condition on any acquirer

Links to third party websites are provided by Oxford in good faith and for information only. Oxford disclaims any responsibility for the materials contained in any third party website referenced in this work

ISBN: 978 0 19 460574 8 Pack
ISBN: 978 0 19 460575 5 Student's Book
ISBN: 978 0 19 479862 4 Oxford Advanced Learner's Dictionary
10th edition app

Printed in China

This book is printed on paper from certified and well-managed sources

ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

Back cover photograph: Oxford University Press building/David Fisher.
Front cover images: Alamy Stock Photo (woman with laptop/Mariusz Szczawinski); Oxford University Press (shark/Shane Gross), (hiker/Olga Danylenko); Shutterstock (man on scooter/OPOLJA), (CT scanner/zlikovec), (apple/Gunnar Pippel), (drilling platform/Oil and Gas Photographer), (protest poster/nicostock), (man with saxophone/Africa Studio), (dining/Pressmaster), (graffiti/Mehaniq).

Although every effort has been made to trace and contact copyright holders before publication, this has not been possible in some cases. We apologise for any apparent infringement of copyright and, if notified, the publisher will be pleased to rectify any errors or omissions at the earliest possible opportunity.

Disclaimer: This book includes some words which have or are asserted to have proprietary status as trademarks or otherwise. Their inclusion does not imply that they have acquired for legal purposes a non-proprietary or general significance nor any other judgement concerning their legal status. In cases where editorial staff have some evidence that a word has proprietary status this is indicated in the listing of that word in the Word list but no judgement concerning the legal status of such words is made or implied thereby.

The authors and publisher are grateful to those who have given permission to reproduce the following extracts and adaptations of copyright material:

p.20 Entries from *Oxford Advanced Learner's Dictionary*, 10th edition © Oxford University Press, reprinted by permission. p.104 Adapted from 'A Revolutionary Era in Medicine' from <http://fiftyyears.healthcare.ucla.edu/>, 1955-2005, UCLA Health, reprinted by permission. p.125 Extract from 'What's so wrong with coalition governments?' by Martin Kettle. Courtesy of Guardian News & Media Ltd. p.133 Extract from 'Media watchdog to investigate broadcasting of Christchurch livestream' by Jennifer Duke, 18 March, 2019. *The Sydney Morning Herald*, reproduced by permission. p.148 Extracts adapted from 'Here's how I exploited a gap in the market', an interview with Jeff Sacree', from www.businesslink.gov.uk. © Crown Copyright 2012, used under the terms of the Open Government Licence v1.0 and reprinted by permission of Jeff Sacree/Gecko Head Gear Limited.

Sources: www.holisticonline.com, www.bbc.co.uk/news

Some of the **ABOUT YOU** answers were kindly supplied by the following people: Elżbieta Rudniak (Poland), Eva Paulerová (Czech Republic), Florence Waeni (Kenya), Franky Lau (China), Katalin Elekes (Hungary), Mallika Ghosh (India), Susana Dichiera (Argentina).

Alamy Stock Photo pp.22 (woman/Tetra Images), (tattoo/Scott Dumas), (old lady/David Grossman), 26 (diving/Wavebreakmedia Ltd), 34 (pinching/Hugh Threfall), 59 Clynt Garnham Lifestyle, 128 Maggie Sully, 132 dpa picture alliance, 156 (burn/Linda Kennedy), 157 (guide book/Jeff Greenberg), 166 Incamerstock, 194 (shade/Paul Biggins); Getty Images pp.26 (split coffee/Lew Robertson), 34 (tapping/PhotoObjects.net), (punching/Rubberball Productions); Oxford University Press pp.56 (mango), (broccoli), 57 (grater), 80 (Algarve), 85, 104, 137; Shutterstock pp.18 (drawing pin/Garsya), (paper clip/Gunchanit Thanompong), (nail polish/suravid), 22 (baby/Monkey Business Images), (grungy girl/Jetrel), (bing man/Discovod), 23 (woman in stripes/Daniella Danilejko), (woman in blue/Alena Ozerova), 24 Koldonov, 25 (clenched fist/Vidi Studio), (folded arms/Kopytin Georgy), (two people/fizkes), (young girl/Haley Alex), 26 (baby/New Africa), (praying/Iidintoriak), (man/fizkes), (sweeping/Syda Productions), (shrugging/The Faces), (lipstick/Makistock), (leaning/baranq), (dragging/Elnur), (tearing paper/Obprod), (plugging in/Tang Wai Chung/Truphotos.com), (combing/Dirima), (folding/Cultura Creative RF), (begging/Andrey_Popov), (sewing/Lightfield Studios Inc), (drilling/ALPHA PROD), (screw/Praful P Patil), 28 (hiker/seirceil), 29 (stretch/WeStudio), (press-ups/slonme), 31 FLPA, 32 Wavebreakmedia Ltd, 34 (squeeze/FREEPIK2), (grabbing/Photographie.eu), (cat/Tamonwan apaikawee), (hugging/Twinster Photo), (slapping/Anton -Dios), (sun tan lotion/Maridav), 35 Prostock-studio, 36 (rash/Sanaph Chindathong), (lungs/Explode), (white t shirt/Freeman Studio), 38 (skull/Baimeng), (black eye/rdgraphe), (sprained wrist/Chanintorn.vi), (blister/Cherries), (bruise/BERNATSKALA OKSANA), 39 (plaster/oatawa), (gauze/Todor Rusinov), (bandage/Pixel-Shot), 40 javi_indy, 42 (Joel/kikovic), (Makito/wong sze yeun), (marek/Olena Siunko), (Jacinta/Zurijeta), 46 Stokkete, 47 michaeljung, 52 (mother and daughter/milatas), (daughter/comzeal images), 54 DONOT6_STUDIO, 56 (avocado), (grapefruit/Robert Zp), (apricot/Vitaly Korovin), (raspberry, aubergine/Nattika), (raisins/Diana Tahan), (celery/Kaiskynet Studio), (asparagus/zcw), (courgette/Superhenag168), (beetroot/Valentina Kazumov), (spinach/Jiri Hera), (almonds/sinelev), (basil/Hortimages), (lentils/mrphoto19), (ginger/MRAORAOR), 57 (deep fat fryer/gowithstock), (casserole/Alekseykolotivin), (food processor/PERLA BERANT WILDER), (whisk/Jiri Hera), (colander/indigolotos), (peeler/M.Schuppich), (lemon squeezer/ViktoriyaFivko), (corkscrew/ajt), (scales/showcake), (knife/masik0553), (frying pan/Tatiana Popova), 62 (ambulance/Joerg Huettlenhoelscher), (helicopter/ChiccoDodiFC), (radio/PunkerBarbyO), 64 PongMojj, 66 (suede/photocell), (silk/sindii), 68 (socket/Lazy Bear), (plug/K-U Haessler), (stool/JoEimaGe), (doormat/Stephen Lavery), (hoover/lale), (ironing board/socrates471), (smoke alarm/ZerborO), (dustbin/Natalis BorodaO), (radiator/VH Studio), (broom/akf film), (chest of drawers/ANTHONY PAZ), (doorbell/ArtWell), (bunk bed/Scott-lee), (bookcase/New Africa), (letter box/Happy Stock Photo), 69 (tap/banu sevim), (blind/SOLOTU), (porch step/Hannahmariah), 70 (yawning/Luis Molinaro), (pyjamas/Art Directors & Trip), (nightdress/WendyTDavis), (alarm/nito), 77 (man/mimagephotography), 79 Speedkinz, 80 (Prague/Jasmine_K), (China/Hung Chung Chih), 82 4H4 Photography, 83 Alan Curtis, 84 (terraced house/andersphoto), (semi-detached/DrimaFilm), 86 (tree/Potapov Alexander), (pond/Kwangmoozaa), (frog/Nancy Hixon), (greenhouse), 87 (bush/Volodymyr Shutun), (digging/Syda Productions), (mowing/fotosparrow), (relaxing/Inigogutierrez), 92 (Bowie/Fabio Diana), (Queen/Muhammad suyanto), (cinema/Dean Drobot), (audience/aergondo2), 100 (phone charging/Remitski Ivan), (batteries/art_photo_sib), (solar panels/Smileus), 103 Scott Ward, 104 (kidney/Peyker), 107 Kay foichtmann, 111 Simon Ling, 114 AnMenshikova, 118 (tank/viper-zero), (helicopter/Thor Jorgen Udvang), (parachute/Phuong D Nguyen), (missile/aapsky), 138 (plumber/Andrey_Popov), (electrician/Lightfield Studios Inc), (carpenter/Dusan Petkovic), 150 (helmet/Ajintai), (lifeboat/Paul Brewer), (surfer/EpicStockMedia), 156 (old barn/Andrew Roland), 157 (anti snore device/Manju Mandavya), (clock/Photohedgehog), (cat/David Asch), (bike/Sergiy1975), 170 (skyscraper/Vladimir Zhuk), (cranes/Yakiv Koroi), 181 (gold/Galina Tjun), (feather/StargazerO), (bat/Rosa Jay), (post/Sulae), (rake/Oleksandr Kostuchenko), (bedsheet/bane.em), (beetroot/Kyselov Inna), (bone/Leo Fernandes), (cake/space_heater), (log/josefauer), (asleep/fizkes), (sieve/Vadarshop), 194 (football/Lazlo Szirtesi).

All illustrations by: CCS Digital Education.

Contents

Acknowledgements	2
Introduction	6

EXPAND YOUR VOCABULARY

01 Meaning and style	10
02 Familiar words, new meanings	12
03 Word families	14
04 Collocation	16
05 Compounds	18
06 Using a dictionary	20

THE BODY

07 Describing appearance	22
08 Body language	24
09 Physical actions	26
10 Physical movement	28
11 Sight	30
12 Sounds and hearing	32
13 Touch	34
14 Illness	36
15 Injuries	38

PEOPLE

16 Character	40
17 Assessing character	42
18 Feelings	44
19 Relationships	46
20 Heroes and villains	48
21 Behaviour	50
22 Families	52
23 Manners	54

EVERYDAY LIFE

24 Food	56
25 Opinions about food	58
26 Cars and driving	60
27 Accidents	62
28 Weather	64
29 Clothes	66
30 At home	68
31 Sleep	70
32 Personal finance	72
33 Crime	74
34 Urban living	76
35 Rural life	78

LEISURE AND LIFESTYLE

36 Holidays	80
37 Holiday accommodation	82
38 Buying and renting	84
39 Gardens and gardening	86
40 Personal technology	88
41 Competitive football	90
42 Music	92
43 Plays and films	94
44 Socializing	96

A CHANGING WORLD

45	Describing change	98
46	Energy conservation	100
47	Wildlife under threat	102
48	Medical advances	104
49	Migration	106
50	Politics: ideology	108

INSTITUTIONS

51	Local government	110
52	Health care services	112
53	The police	114
54	Prisons	116
55	The armed forces	118

NEWS AND CURRENT AFFAIRS

56	News headlines	120
57	Writing for a newspaper	122
58	Politics in practice	124
59	Protest movements	126
60	Disasters	128
61	Investigations	130
62	Celebrity	132
63	Human interest stories	134

WORK AND BUSINESS

64	Jobs	136
65	Careers	138
66	Ways of working	140
67	The workplace	142
68	Time management	144
69	The business world	146
70	A successful business	148

CONCEPTS

71	Success and failure	150
72	Problems and solutions	152
73	Old and new	154
74	Time	156

WRITTEN ENGLISH

75	Link words and phrases	158
76	Academic English	160
77	Literature	162
78	Art	164
79	Scientific English	166
80	Technical English	168

SPOKEN ENGLISH

81	Everyday language	170
82	Phrasal verbs	172
83	Idioms (1)	174
84	Idioms (2)	176
85	Two-part expressions	178
86	Similes	179
87	Connecting speech	180
88	Sayings	182
89	Vague language	184

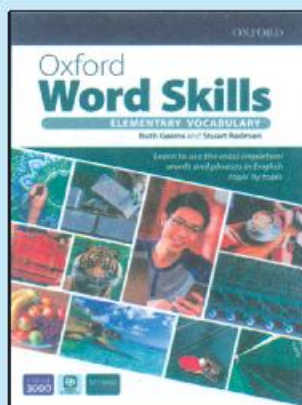
ASPECTS OF LANGUAGE

90	The passive	185
91	Prefixes	186
92	Suffixes that form nouns	188
93	Suffixes that form adjectives and verbs	190
94	Verbs and nouns with the same form	192
95	Verbs with prepositions	194
96	Nouns with prepositions	196
97	Adjectives with prepositions	197
98	Prepositional phrases	198
99	Adjectives	200
100	Adverbs	202
	Answer key	204
	Word list	236
	Abbreviations	256

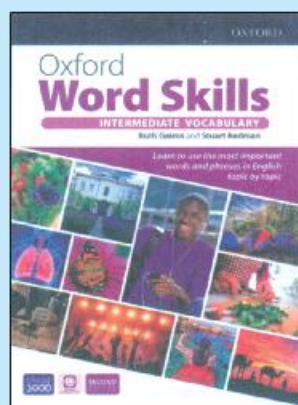
Introduction

What is *Oxford Word Skills*?

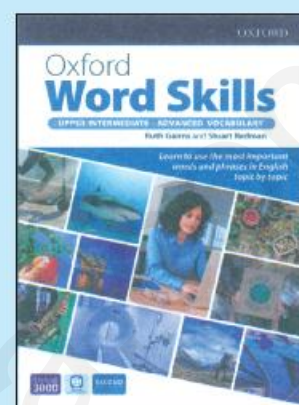
Oxford Word Skills is a series of three books for students to learn and practise new vocabulary.



Level 1:
Elementary (CEFR levels A1 and A2)



Level 2:
Intermediate (CEFR level B1)



Level 3:
Upper-Intermediate – Advanced
(CEFR levels B2 and C1)

There are over 2,000 new words or phrases in each level, and all of the material can be used in the classroom or for self-study.


How are the books organized?

Each level contains 100 units of vocabulary presentation and practice, with a unit being 1–2 pages, depending on the size of the topic. New vocabulary is presented in manageable chunks, then immediately followed up with practice exercises, often on the same page.

The units are grouped within modules containing 4–12 units. A majority of the modules are topic-based, e.g. People, Leisure and lifestyle, News and current affairs, but some modules have a language focus, e.g. Expand your vocabulary, Aspects of language.

The Upper-Intermediate – Advanced level also contains:

- an Answer key for all the exercises
- a Word list of all the vocabulary taught with a reference to the units where each item appears and the CEFR level for words/phrases in the Oxford 3000™/5000™ or Oxford Phrase List™.

Oxford Word Skills comes with the *Oxford Advanced Learner's Dictionary* app, which allows learners to find the meaning of new words in English and provides a pronunciation model for the words. You will find pronunciation exercises throughout the book which refer you to the  to check the correct pronunciation.

What vocabulary is included?

At Upper-Intermediate - Advanced level, the vocabulary includes:

- a wide range of topic areas, e.g. behaviour, competitive sport, medical advances
- a range of concepts, e.g. problems and solutions, time, old and new
- different fields of written English, e.g. literature, science, technical English
- a wide range of phrasal verbs and idioms
- various aspects of language, e.g. compounds, prefixes and suffixes, prepositional phrases


Throughout the three levels the main focus is on high-frequency vocabulary in everyday spoken English, although the higher levels increasingly add more language from different styles of English as well as more figurative use of language.

The selection of vocabulary at each level is based on frequency and usefulness, with the foundation being the Oxford 3000 or Oxford 5000. These are lists of 3,000 and 5,000 words, respectively, identified by the Oxford University Press ELT Dictionaries team as the most important words for learners of English. These items have been divided in the Oxford 3000 into four levels in accordance with the CEFR (A1, A2, B1 and B2), and the Oxford 5000 contains additional words at CEFR levels B2 and C1.



- The Elementary level includes many items from A1, but with the majority of items at A2 level.
- The Intermediate level has a focus on B1 items from the Oxford 3000, as well as recycling items from the A2 level.
- The Upper-Intermediate – Advanced level concentrates on B2 items from the Oxford 3000, but also includes additional B2 items and C1 words from the Oxford 5000.

The Oxford 3000/5000 lists are supplemented by the Oxford Phrase List, which contains just under 1,000 phrases considered important for students at each level. The Upper-Intermediate – Advanced word list also draws on topic lists from OUP's learner's dictionaries, which identify key vocabulary items across a range of 60 topics. By using the Oxford 3000/5000 alongside the topic lists, we are able to focus on high-frequency vocabulary, but also to include vocabulary that may not have a high frequency overall, but will have great value in particular contexts, e.g. **overtake** when talking about driving, **extinct/extinction** when talking about climate change and the danger to wildlife, or **self-catering** when talking about holidays. By using the Oxford Phrase List, we are also able to ensure the best coverage of both words and phrases at each level.

We have taken great care to ensure that learners will be able to understand the meaning of all the new words and phrases by supplying a clear illustration, a simple definition, or an example of each word or phrase. Learners should be aware that many English words have more than one meaning. They should refer to the *Oxford Advanced Learner's Dictionary*  for information on other meanings.

To the teacher

How can I use the material in the classroom?

New vocabulary is presented through:

- **visuals**



- **sentences and short dialogues**

Time Management tips	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Do you note down jobs you have to do on a daily basis? • Do you put up reminders in the office about these aims? • Do you prioritize the tasks you have to accomplish by the end of the day? • Do you stick to your priorities, no matter what happens? • Do you focus on one thing at a time? 	<p>basis note of sth a particular way in which sth is organized or done: on a day-to-day/daily/weekly/regular basis</p> <p>reminder sth that makes you remember sth remind sb (of/about sth) v</p> <p>prioritize put tasks, problems, etc. in order of importance so that you can do the most important first priority n: a high/low/top priority</p>
-----------------------------	---	--

Idiom	Meaning
<i>I'm going to do the essay again. ~ What for?</i>	for what purpose or reason
<i>Are you going to the party? ~ You bet!</i>	used to emphasize that you are keen to do sth
<i>I've got my exam today. ~ OK. (The) best of luck.</i>	used to wish sb success in what they are going to do

- **different types of extended written text**

<p>The Glasgow School of Art has been devastated yet again by a huge fire. More than 120 firefighters tackled the blaze, which began on Friday night and spread to a concert hall next door. There were no reported casualties, but police evacuated 27 people from nearby properties as a precaution. At the moment, there is no suspicion the fire was started deliberately, but the intense heat is preventing fire officers from getting in to assess the damage. First Minister, Nicola Sturgeon, praised the courage of the firefighters who fought to save the building.</p>	<p>GLOSSARY</p> <p>devastate destroy or damage sth badly devastation n</p> <p>firefighter a person whose job is to stop fires, working for the fire brigade</p> <p>tackle make an effort to deal with a difficult problem or situation</p> <p>blaze a large and often dangerous fire</p> <p>casualty a person who is killed or injured in a war or accident</p> <p>precaution sth you do in order to avoid danger or problems</p> <p>suspicion a feeling or belief that sth is wrong or that sb has done sth wrong suspicious (of sb) adj suspect v</p> <p>deliberately In a way that was planned deliberate adj SYN intentional</p> <p>intense very great, strong or serious: intense heat/cold/pressure intensity n</p> <p>assess judge or form an opinion about sth assessment n</p> <p>praise say that sb is good and should be admired for sth praise n</p> <p>courage the ability to do sth dangerous without showing fear SYN bravery; courageous adj</p>
---	---

- Visuals provide a clear guide to meaning; sentences, dialogues and extended text show words being used naturally, with the meaning explained in a glossary (or within a table). The input varies from approximately 15 items in a single A or B section, to 25–30 items on a full page of input. Here is a procedure you could follow:
- Students study the visuals or written text in the presentation for five–ten minutes for an A or B section, or ten–fifteen minutes for a full page. This allows time for them to reinforce the connection between the visual input and the meanings, or to read through the glossary carefully to check the meaning of new items in the presentation sentences, dialogues or extended text. With the information from the glossary, students should then go back to the presentation text and check that they fully understand the meaning of the new words in those contexts.

Tell students to look at the extra words in the **glossary** (opposites, synonyms, derivatives, collocations and further examples) as this will help them to expand their vocabulary with minimal effort in many cases. It is also important to look at the **spotlight** boxes. The spotlight box is an additional feature which picks out an item or items of particular value. For example:

SPOTLIGHT *accept*

Accept means 'say yes to an offer', but has some other meanings, too.


- 1 allow sb to be part of a group:
*They **accepted me** as one of the family. (as in the text)*
- 2 agree to sth:
*The council has **accepted** the latest proposal.*
- 3 admit you did sth wrong:
*I **accept responsibility** for the mistakes.*

SPOTLIGHT *expressing family similarities*


If you **resemble someone/something**, you look like or are similar to another person/thing. The emphasis is more on looks than character. **resemblance** *n*

If you **take after someone**, you look or behave like an older member of your family.

If you **follow in someone's footsteps**, you do the same job or have the same lifestyle as someone else, usually a member of your family.

- While students are working through the presentation, you can answer any questions they may have about the items. This is also an opportunity to provide a pronunciation model for your students to repeat; otherwise, the presentation stage is going to be a long silent phase. You might want to read a text aloud, or get students to read sections of it, etc.
- Students can move on to the first exercise, which they can check for themselves using the Answer key, or you can go over the answers with the whole class. This is probably a better approach, as you can also discuss why they might have arrived at a wrong answer and focus on practising the pronunciation if necessary. It is sensible to work through the exercises chronologically, as they tend to progress from pronunciation practice to receptive practice to controlled productive practice, and then quite often to freer productive practice in the **ABOUT YOU** or **ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY** activities.
- When you are satisfied with their answers to the first exercise, you can ask students to go on to further exercises, while you monitor them as they work individually or in pairs, and assist where necessary. When they have finished an exercise, you will find that many of the exercises – sentence completion and particularly dialogue completion – lend themselves to controlled speaking practice. Students can practise dialogues in pairs, or take it in turns to read out complete sentences to each other.
-  **TEST YOURSELF** When they have completed written exercises, students can test themselves on the new vocabulary. The material has been designed so that students can cover the new words beneath a picture (using a book, notebook or piece of paper) while they look at the visuals and test themselves. They can do the same with some of the tables and glossaries: cover the new vocabulary and look at the meaning, or vice versa. This is a simple, quick and easy way for learners to test themselves over and over again, so there is no pressure on you to keep searching for different exercises. It is also useful to demonstrate this so that students can revise vocabulary in their own time using this 'cover and check' approach.
- You will often notice **ABOUT YOU** or **ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY**. These are personalized exercises which give learners an opportunity to use the new vocabulary in a freer way and within the context of their own lives. Students can write answers to these, but they make ideal pairwork activities for students to practise their spoken English while using the new vocabulary. If you use these as speaking activities, students could then write their answers (or their partner's answers) as follow-up. In the Answer key, possible answers for these exercises are provided by both native speakers and proficient non-native speakers from different parts of the world. This may be of particular value to a self-study learner, as a way of comparing answers.

How can students use the material on their own?

The material has been designed so that it can be used effectively both in the classroom or by learners working alone. If you want your learners to use the material for self-study, you can recommend that they use the book alongside the , as it gives them a pronunciation model for items of vocabulary, as well as further practice exercises. For self-study learners in particular, it is a good idea to start with the first module on expanding your vocabulary. Self-study learners can check their answers to exercises using the Answer key, and test themselves using the 'cover and check' procedure explained above. They can also select the topics that interest them, or the topics where they most need to expand their vocabulary.

1 Meaning and style

A Asking about meaning

- A** Would it be **accurate** to say that *student* and *pupil* are **synonymous**?
- B** No, not exactly. A *student* is a person who studies in a school, college or university. *Pupil* has a more **restricted** use. A *pupil* is someone who only studies in a school, especially a primary school.
- A** It's a bit **ambiguous** to say *she's a good student*, isn't it?
- B** Yes, you can **interpret** it in different ways. *Good* can mean 'well-behaved' or 'hard-working'.
- A** The meaning of *wrapping paper* is fairly obvious, isn't it?
- B** Yes, it's **self-explanatory**: just paper for wrapping presents and stuff.
- A** Can you give me a **precise** definition of *soul*?
- B** Well, it's **virtually** the same as *spirit*: the part of you that is believed to exist after you die. But *spirit* has several other meanings too.

GLOSSARY

accurate	exact and correct; without mistakes OPP inaccurate ; accuracy <i>n</i>
synonymous	having the same, or nearly the same meaning synonym <i>n</i>
restricted	controlled or limited
ambiguous	not clear; able to be explained in different ways ambiguity <i>n</i>
interpret	explain the meaning of sth interpretation <i>n</i>
self-explanatory	easy to understand and not needing more explanation
precise	clear and accurate SYN exact ; precision <i>n</i>
virtually	almost, very nearly; virtually the same virtual <i>adj</i>

1 Mark the stress on these words. Use the APP to help you.

- | | | | |
|------------|--------------|-------------|--------------------|
| 1 accurate | 3 synonymous | 5 ambiguity | 7 interpretation |
| 2 synonym | 4 ambiguous | 6 interpret | 8 self-explanatory |

2 Is the meaning the same or different? Write S or D.

- The meaning is virtually the same. / The meaning is exactly the same.
- They are both students in my school. / They are both pupils in my school.
- The meaning is quite precise. / The meaning is quite restricted.
- The sentence is ambiguous. / The sentence can be interpreted in two ways.
- I don't know the exact meaning. / I don't know the precise meaning.
- Tom is fairly inaccurate. / Tom makes very few mistakes.
- His soul will live on. / His spirit will live on.
- What she said was fairly ambiguous. / What she said was fairly accurate.

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word in capitals at the end.

- If you want to make something clear, it's better to avoid **AMBIGUOUS**
- She always expresses herself with **PRECISE**
- Hide* and *conceal* are very similar, but not completely **SYNONYM**
- Elsie is quite fluent but she lacks **ACCURATE**
- I think this sentence is open to **INTERPRET**
- The instructions were ; a child could understand them. **EXPLAIN**
- They are opposites. **VIRTUAL**

4 Answer the questions.

- What's the exact meaning of *huge*?
- Which word is more restricted: *get* or *acquire*? Why?
- Is the meaning of *waiting room* fairly self-explanatory? Why? / Why not?
- Are *slim* and *thin* synonyms? Why? / Why not?
- Is it accurate to say that a pupil studies in a secondary school? Why? / Why not?
- I picked up my bag*. Why could this sentence be ambiguous?



B Explaining style

Example	Meaning
<i>'Thanks for your help, Sam,' she said ironically. Sam hadn't helped at all.</i>	ironically using words to say the opposite of what you mean, often humorously ironic adj; irony n
The literal sense of <i>gold</i> is 'a valuable yellow metal used to make coins, jewellery, etc.'.	literal (of words and phrases) being the basic or usual meaning literally adv
Golden is used figuratively in the sentence <i>Working in this company is a golden opportunity for him.</i>	figuratively (of words and phrases) not used in the basic or usual way, but in a way that makes a description more interesting (Golden here means 'wonderful' or 'special'.) figurative adj
<i>She has a heart of gold</i> is an example of a metaphor . It means 'she is a very kind person'.	metaphor a word or phrase used to describe sb/sth else in a way that is different from its normal use metaphorical adj = figurative
The dictionary marks <i>stupid</i> as disapproving .	disapproving (often used in dictionaries) showing that sth is bad or wrong
In slang , a <i>shrink</i> is a psychiatrist or a psychologist.	slang very informal words and phrases, used by particular groups of people in spoken language
Swear words are offensive to many people and not appropriate in most everyday conversations.	offensive rude in a way that causes you to be upset or angry OPP inoffensive appropriate suitable or correct OPP inappropriate
<i>He called Tom 'an old woman'. How insulting!</i>	insulting rude or offensive insult n, v

SPOTLIGHT *swear*

Swearing is the use of **swear words** (= rude or offensive language). If you **swear at** somebody, you might make them angry. **Swear** can also mean to make a serious promise to do something.

- He **swore** that he would kill anyone who touched me.

5 Underline the words which usually suggest something negative.

disapproving figurative inappropriate insulting irony
literal metaphor offensive slang swearing

6 Circle the correct word(s). Sometimes both words are correct.

- The *literal* / *figurative* meaning of *curtain* is a piece of cloth which covers a window.
- The *curtain fell on her career* is *figurative* / *metaphorical*. It means 'her career ended'.
- Irony* / *Slang* is commonly used to say the opposite of what you mean.
- Ana is so kind; she has a heart of *silver* / *gold*.
- It may be *appropriate* / *inappropriate* to ask someone how much they earn or how old they are.
- He was being *ironic* / *offensive* – he didn't mean to be rude.
- I think it was *a metaphor* / *an insult* to say you were stupid.
- Swearing is *offensive* / *inoffensive* to many people.

7 Complete the sentences with a suitable word.

- Naïve* often has a negative meaning and is marked '.....' in the dictionary.
- Flood* is one of those words that can be used literally or
- He said my food was tasteless, which I found incredibly
- Knackered* is very informal, means 'extremely tired', and is an example of British English
- The offer is a opportunity for my brother to work abroad for a year.
- Pull your socks up* is often used as a meaning 'you must work harder and do better'.
- A man at me in the street because I got in his way. I was very upset.
- They live just round the corner, so I see them every day.



TEST YOURSELF

A Using words and phrases figuratively

Familiar words may appear with an unfamiliar meaning (often a figurative meaning), or surrounded by other words that together form an idiom or common phrase.

As I **crawled** along the motorway, I was **having second thoughts about** staying with Marcus. I'd **been in two minds about** going in the first place, but it was **sweet of** him to invite me, and I **wasn't tied up**, so I said 'yes'. But now it **struck me that** perhaps he wanted to go out with me! How could I be so **thick**? Marcus was very nice, but a romantic relationship **was the last thing on my mind**. How can I **get out of** this, I wondered? Just then, the traffic suddenly started to speed up, and something went into the back of me. I pulled my mobile out of my bag. 'Is that you Marcus? Listen, **you're not gonna believe this**, but ...'

GLOSSARY

crawl	(of a vehicle) move very slowly
have second thoughts (about sth)	start having doubts about a decision you have made
be in two minds about sth	be unable to decide what to do about sth
sweet (of sb)	kind (of sb): <i>It was sweet of you to come.</i>
be tied up	be busy and unable to do other things
strike sb (that) ...	(of a thought or idea) suddenly come into sb's mind
thick inf	stupid
be the last thing on sb's mind	be the thing that sb is least likely to be thinking about
get out of sth	avoid doing sth
you're not gonna believe this	used to introduce surprising and often unwelcome news (<i>gonna inf = going to</i>)

1 Make sentences from the jumbled words.

- gonna / not / lost / this / I / but / you're / believe. _____
- homework / out / I / this / get / doing / of / how / can ? _____
- going / two / about / I'm / minds / to / in / Greece. _____
- thing / on / university / mind / is / the / last / my. _____
- it / take / of / sweet / to / us / was / him. _____

2 Complete the dialogues with a word or phrase.

- Do you still want to go? ~ Actually, I'm having _____.
- Are you thinking of getting married? ~ No, that's the last thing _____!
- Do you want to go to the wedding? ~ Not really, but I can't _____ it.
- You're not gonna _____, but ... ~ You've lost my keys, again! How could you?
- Did he invite all of you? ~ Yes, it was very _____ of him. He's a lovely man.
- Are you going or not? ~ I'm still in _____ about it, actually.
- Did you think she looked like her sister? ~ Yes, I was _____ by how similar they are.
- Could we talk about it this morning? ~ I'm afraid I'm _____ this morning.
- Why are you so late? ~ Half the road was closed. We were _____ along for ages.
- He may not have understood the instructions. ~ Yeah, he's a bit _____.

3 Complete the sentences using words from above with their more usual literal meanings.

- Leyla is only eight months, so she's still _____ across the living room floor.
- It's a very _____ book – almost 1,000 pages.
- These oranges are lovely. They're very _____.
- The men were _____, with both hands behind their backs.
- I saw him _____ the dog with a large stick. I was really angry.
- The policeman stopped me and asked me to _____ the car.
- I've just had a _____, Carrie. Do you think we could hire a car for the weekend?
- I think his _____ was disturbed when he had that accident.



TEST YOURSELF

B Common verbs with less familiar meanings

The words in **bold** in the examples are very common when the verbs are used with the meanings in the table.

Verb	Examples	Meaning
get sb/sth to do sth	<i>I couldn't get him to leave the house. I finally got the car to start.</i>	make or persuade sb/sth to do sth
see what/how, etc. ...	<i>We may be able to help. I'll see what Rob says. It may be ok. Let's see what happens.</i>	find out sth by looking, asking or waiting
keep	<i>We must eat the grapes – they won't keep.</i>	remain fresh
put	<i>I think he put it very well in his essay.</i>	say or write sth in a particular way ALSO put sth into words
push sb/yourself	<i>Some parents push their kids really hard.</i>	make sb work harder
leave sth to/with sb	<i>We need to book a table. I'll leave that to you.</i>	allow sb to take care of sth
make sth sth	<i>My watch says 10.20. What time do you make it? He bought ten more; I make that 25 now.</i>	think or calculate sth to be a particular time or number
bring sb/sth + adverb/preposition	<i>It was the war that brought him to power. What brings you here? ~ I've got a meeting.</i>	cause sb/sth to reach a particular condition or place
come with/in sth	<i>I'm sure the radio comes with batteries. The chairs come in four different colours.</i>	be sold or produced with a particular feature
do (for sb/sth)	<i>I peeled six potatoes. Will that do? Will these shoes do for the wedding?</i>	be enough/ acceptable in a particular situation

4 One word is missing in each sentence. What is it, and where does it go?

- How did you **get** him to do it? ~ I offered him money.
- These batteries **come** in all sorts of different sizes.
- If both brothers **bring**, that will **do** it 20 altogether.
- It's the fishing that most people **leave** to this part of the coast.
- When I speak to the staff tomorrow, I'll **see** what they think.
- We'd better finish the cream: it won't **keep** after today.
- He has great ideas but finds it difficult to **put** them into words.
- I've got a packet of noodles. Do you think that will **do for** six people?

5 Complete the dialogues with suitable verbs.

- A** Hello. What **(1)** you to this part of the building?
B I can't **(2)** this new clock to work, and it didn't **(3)** with instructions.
A OK, **(4)** it with me. I'll **(5)** what I can do.
B Thanks. Oh, one other thing, we've run out of paper for the photocopier.
A Er, there's some over there. Will that **(6)** ?
B Yeah, that's plenty.
A What are the bookings like for this evening?
B We had two more this morning, so I **(7)** that 36 now.
A Ok, but we'll need more tables. Can I **(8)** that with you?
B Well, I'll **(9)** how things go, but I may have to **(10)** Mario to do it.
A OK, but don't **(11)** him too hard; he's had a very tough week.

6 ABOUT YOUR LANGUAGE Translate the verbs in the table into your own language. What verbs are used?



3 Word families

By learning words that are part of the same word family, you can often increase your vocabulary quickly and easily. For example, you will probably know the words in the left-hand column below, but do you know the related words?

Word	Related word and its meaning	Example
mistake <i>n</i>	mistake sb/sth for sb/sth <i>v</i> wrongly think that sb/sth is sb/sth else	<i>I mistook the woman in the café for a friend of mine.</i>
certain <i>adj</i>	certainty <i>n</i> the state of being completely sure about sth OPP uncertainty	<i>Is there any certainty things will improve?</i>
problem <i>n</i>	problematic <i>adj</i> difficult to deal with; full of problems	<i>Some places can be problematic for journalists.</i>
possession <i>n</i>	possess <i>v</i> formal have or own sth	<i>Some players just possess natural ability.</i>
benefit <i>n, v</i>	beneficial <i>adj</i> having a good or useful effect	<i>The extra money has been very beneficial.</i>
require <i>v</i>	requirement <i>n</i> sth that you need or that you must have or do	<i>A university degree is a minimum requirement.</i>
house <i>n</i>	housing <i>n</i> buildings for people to live in household all the people who live in one house	<i>We need more family housing.</i> <i>Most households have at least one car.</i>
likely <i>adv</i>	likelihood <i>n</i> the chance of sth happening	<i>There's not much likelihood of success.</i>
handle <i>v</i>	handling <i>n</i> the way sb deals with sth/sb	<i>The situation needs careful handling.</i>
guide <i>n, v</i>	guidelines <i>n</i> (usually <i>pl</i>) official rules guidance <i>n</i> help or advice	<i>There are guidelines on repairing old buildings.</i> <i>Our teacher gave us some guidance.</i>
apologize <i>v</i>	apologetic <i>adj</i> showing you are sorry	<i>It's his fault and he's very apologetic.</i>
notice <i>v</i>	noticeable <i>adj</i> easily seen/noticed	<i>The scar on his face is quite noticeable.</i>
include <i>v</i>	inclusive <i>adj</i> (of the cost of sth) including everything inclusion <i>n</i> the fact of including sb/sth; the fact of being included	<i>Bed and breakfast is £80, fully inclusive.</i> <i>The inclusion of dancing as part of the entertainment was unnecessary.</i>
compare <i>v</i>	comparable <i>adj</i> similar; able to be compared	<i>This year looks good. Are there comparable figures for last year?</i>
replace <i>v</i>	replacement <i>n</i> a thing that replaces sth that is old, broken, etc. irreplaceable cannot be replaced	<i>The coffee machine isn't working, so can we get a replacement?</i> <i>My wedding ring is irreplaceable.</i>
human <i>n, adj</i>	humanity <i>n</i> all the people in the world SYN the human race humanitarian concerned with trying to make people's lives better	<i>War crimes are crimes against humanity.</i> <i>The war has caused a humanitarian crisis.</i>
race <i>n</i> (of people)	racism <i>n</i> the unfair treatment of people who belong to a different race. The person who does this is a racist. racist <i>adj</i>	<i>We must take action to stop racism in the workplace.</i> <i>He was attacked by a group of racists.</i> <i>The newspaper was racist and was closed down.</i>
recognize <i>v</i>	recognition <i>n</i> the fact that you can identify sb/sth that you see	<i>She'd seen me several times but showed no sign of recognition.</i>

SPOTLIGHT related words with different meanings

Words in the same word family do not always have similar meanings. For example, the adjective **worth** can mean:

- 1 having a particular value;
- 2 used as a way of recommending: *The castle is worth seeing.*

It also has these related forms and meanings:

- *The necklace is worthless.* (= without value)
- *He's a worthy champion.* (= one who deserved to win)
- *The meeting was worthwhile.* (= important, interesting, etc.)

1 Mark the stress on these words. Use the APP to help you.

- | | | | | |
|-------------|-------------|-------------|--------------|---------------|
| problematic | likelihood | requirement | benefit | beneficial |
| worthwhile | recognition | comparable | apologize | irreplaceable |
| apologetic | household | humanity | humanitarian | possess |

2 Circle the correct answer.

- This painting is unique; it's *unreplaceable* / *irreplaceable*.
- You get flights, accommodation, and food; the holiday is fully *included* / *inclusive*.
- There is a *noticeable* / *noticed* difference between the two performances.
- We're amateurs and they're professionals, so we're not *comparable* / *comparative*.
- People are dying. It's a *humanitarian* / *humanity* crisis.
- I enjoyed the trip: it was very *worthy* / *worthwhile*.
- The delay was his fault, but he wasn't *apologizing* / *apologetic* about it.
- People are homeless because there's a shortage of cheap *households* / *housing*.

3 Rewrite the sentences using a related word of the word in capitals. Keep the same meaning.

- | | | |
|--|-----------|---|
| ▶ Are you sure it will happen? | CERTAIN | <i>Is there any certainty it will happen?</i> |
| 1 He deserved to win. | WORTH | ..... |
| 2 Is there a chance we'll win? | LIKELY | ..... |
| 3 Most families earn more than in the past. | HOUSE | ..... |
| 4 Can you see that he's lost a lot of weight? | NOTICE | ..... |
| 5 It's an unusual vase but has no value. | WORTH | ..... |
| 6 People don't realize the importance of these measures. | RECOGNIZE | ..... |
| 7 It was a very interesting conference. | WORTH | ..... |
| 8 The tablets had a positive effect. | BENEFIT | ..... |

4 Complete the dialogues with a suitable word.

- | | |
|---|-------------------------------------|
| 1 Are there enough homes in the area? | ~ No, we need more |
| 2 What can people do about the danger of infection? | ~ The government has issued |
| 3 Was she sorry? | ~ Yes, very |
| 4 Is that £65 for everything? | ~ Yes, it's fully |
| 5 It's a difficult class to teach. | ~ Yes, they're very |
| 6 Climate change affects everyone. | ~ Yes, it's a problem for |
| 7 This lamp doesn't work | ~ Yes, I've already ordered a |
| 8 It's a difficult situation. | ~ Yes, and it needs careful |

5 Complete the sentences with a suitable word.

- Some young parents would benefit from more on how to bring up children.
- Several charities have warned that we are facing a crisis in parts of Africa.
- The post office said the parcel would be delivered tomorrow, but there's no of that.
- The of meals makes the total price very expensive.
- Do you think Ivan the right qualities for the job?
- I walked off with someone else's coat: I it for my own.
- Flats in big cities are expensive in England. A flat in Spain would cost a lot less.
- Some say we will win, others say we'll lose. There is a lot of about the result.

6 ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY Write answers to the questions, or talk to another student.

- Do hotels usually give a fully inclusive price for a room and breakfast?
- Is housing a particular problem in any part of the country?
- Are prices generally comparable with other countries nearby, or are they very different?
- Is there a minimum requirement for going to university?
- Do you feel there are any problems with racism in your country?
- Do you feel a degree of certainty about your future career?



A Verb + noun

Collocation is the common combination of particular words with each other, and particular **collocations** may be different in your language. In English, certain verbs **collocate with** certain nouns. You will need to learn many of these **collocations**.

In any school, the headteacher obviously has to **make an effort** to **set an example** to their staff and students, and that starts by **treating** everyone **with respect**. It is also their job to **take responsibility** for important decisions that the school makes. If things go well, the headteacher **gets the credit**; if they don't, he or she has to be prepared to **take the blame**.

Carrie had been **spreading** a **rumour** that Sean and Sophie were going to have a baby, although she told everyone else to **keep it a secret**. It was, therefore, quite a shock when Sean finally **broke the news** to everyone that they were going to get a cat. We all **roared with laughter** – everyone except Carrie.

GLOSSARY

make an effort (to do sth)	attempt to do sth, especially when it is difficult
set an example (to sb)	do sth good or well that people can try to copy or achieve: set a good example
treat sb with respect	behave towards sb in a polite and caring way OPP treat sb like dirt
take responsibility (for sth/sb)	accept a duty to deal with sth/sb, so that it is your fault if sth goes wrong OPP pass the buck make sb else responsible for a difficult situation
get the credit (for sth)	be admired and given the praise for doing sth successfully
take the blame (for sth)	accept responsibility for sth that goes wrong
spread a rumour	tell a lot of people about a piece of news or information that may not be true
keep (sth) a secret	not tell anyone about sth that others must not know ALSO keep a promise / an appointment / a record
break the news	be the first person to tell others about sth important
roar with laughter	laugh loudly or a lot

1 Yes or No?

- If you keep a promise, is that a good thing?
- If you get the credit for something, are you pleased?
- If you pass the buck, are others happy?
- If you take the blame, is that positive?
- If you treat somebody like dirt, is that good?
- If you spread a rumour, is that a good thing to do?
- If you treat someone with respect, will they be pleased?
- If you take responsibility, is that a bad thing to do?

2 Complete the sentences with a suitable verb + noun combination.

- Teenagers respond well to her because she them with
- I didn't tell anyone because Emma told me to it a
- My sister has been a that I'm getting engaged. It's not true.
- Tanya does a fantastic job, but doesn't always the she deserves.
- It was a very funny joke, and everyone with
- My parents a good to me, and now I always an to do the same with my children.
- I can't remember who the about the wedding, but we were all delighted.
- My boss never accepts responsibility for things. He always the and makes someone else the
- Young people must learn to for their actions; it's part of growing up.

3 There are many combinations with take, make and set. Do you know which verbs combine with each of these nouns?

control of sth	a limit	an impression	pleasure in doing sth	sth on fire
a profit	tablets	an offer	a look at sth	the standard
				a noise

take: make: set:



TEST YOURSELF

B Adjective + noun

There are also many common **adjective + noun** collocations that you may need to learn. For example, a person you know well and like is a **close friend** (NOT a **near friend** OR an **intimate friend**).

EXAMPLE

*I gave them a **detailed description** of the burglary.*

*He speaks with a **strong accent**.*

*Our **main concern** for the party is the weather.*

*It was a **typical example** of his stupidity.*

*The house was **utter chaos** when I got home.*

*The children had a **narrow escape**.*

*Nice to see a **familiar face** at the party.*

*The **vast majority** of students passed.*

*My sister's ring is **pure gold**.*

*I thought he'd be tall but he was **the complete opposite**.*

MEANING

a description full of information **OPP** brief description

a very noticeable accent **OPP** slight accent

most important worry **SYN** principal concern

very good example **SYN** perfect example

complete confusion **ALSO** utter nonsense

ideas that you think are stupid or not true

= they were lucky to escape safely

a person you recognize and know

a very large majority

not mixed with anything else **ALSO** pure silk/cotton

a person or thing that is as different as possible from sb/sth else **SYN** the exact opposite

4 Cover the text above and match 1–8 with a–h.

- | | | | |
|--------------|-------|---|-------------|
| 1 a familiar | ..... | a | escape |
| 2 a typical | ..... | b | chaos |
| 3 a vast | ..... | c | face |
| 4 a slight | ..... | d | opposite |
| 5 utter | ..... | e | accent |
| 6 a detailed | ..... | f | majority |
| 7 the exact | ..... | g | description |
| 8 a narrow | ..... | h | example |

5 Answer the questions. What's ...

- | | | | |
|--|-------|---|-------|
| 1 a synonym for a typical example? | ..... | 4 the opposite of a detailed description? | ..... |
| 2 the opposite of a slight accent? | ..... | 5 a synonym for the complete opposite? | ..... |
| 3 a synonym for the main concern? | ..... | 6 a noun that combines with utter? | ..... |

6 Complete the dialogues with a suitable **adjective + noun** combination.

- | | | |
|---|--|---------------------------------|
| 1 Was it true what your dad said? | ~ No, it was | Don't believe anything he says. |
| 2 Did they all understand? | ~ No, the | I had to explain it. |
| 3 You managed to avoid the accident? | ~ Yes, but it was a | |
| 4 Are you worried about the exam? | ~ Yes, my | is that I get nervous. |
| 5 Did the top feel nice when you tried it on? | ~ Yes, lovely. It was | |
| 6 Do you know what she looks like? | ~ Yes, my uncle gave me a | |
| 7 Did you see your old friends in Cardiff? | ~ Yes, and it was great to see so many | |
| 8 Ingrid's English is good. | ~ Yes, but she speaks with a | |
| 9 Do you get on well? | ~ Yes, we're | |
| 10 Was everything tidy when you got there? | ~ No, the place was in | |

7 ABOUT YOUR LANGUAGE How would you translate the phrases above? Would you use similar adjective and noun combinations, or would they be different?

TEST YOURSELF

5 Compounds

A Nouns

English has a large number of compound nouns formed from a *noun + noun*. Cover the compounds below and read the meanings. Do you know these compounds, or can you guess them?



drawing pin



paper clip



barbed wire



nail polish/varnish

Meaning	Compound noun
an official document that shows you are qualified to drive	driving licence
an official document showing when and where someone was born	birth certificate
a card given to customers by a shop to encourage them to shop there regularly. Each time they shop, they get money off goods they buy in the future.	loyalty card
a part for a car or machine to replace an old or broken part	spare part
confidence in yourself and your abilities	self-confidence
the number of years that a person is likely to live	life expectancy
a path or route that is quicker than the normal way	shortcut
the language that you first learn to speak as a child	mother tongue
food that is quick and easy to prepare and eat but not good for your health	junk food
a person that you admire and try to copy	role model

1 Replace the crossed-out word with a word that forms a compound noun.

- Do you know a short ~~way~~ to the school from here?
- Have you got any nail ~~paint~~?
- Does she have enough ~~personal~~ confidence?
- I ripped my shirt on the ~~twisted~~ wire around the field.
- What's the average life ~~length~~ for men in your country?
- I stepped on a drawing ~~nail~~ – it really hurt.
- I need some paper ~~staples~~ to put these notes together.
- Is it easy to get ~~new~~ parts for your car?

2 Complete the compound in each sentence.

- What is your mother? What other languages do you speak?
- Have you got a driving? How long have you had it?
- Do you know where your birth is? If so, where?
- Do you have any cards for different shops? If so, which?
- Are there any short you often take? If so, where to?
- Who has been the most important role in your life?
- Do you ever wear polish? If so, what colour?
- Do you often eat food? If so, what, and why?

3 ABOUT YOU Write answers to the questions in Exercise 2, or ask another student.

4 Eight of the words below form compounds with *card*, one forms a compound with *pass*, and one forms a compound with *pass* and *card* (with the same meaning). Can you complete the compounds correctly?

greetings identity bus credit rail post boarding debit SIM gift



TEST YOURSELF

B Adjectives

Most compound adjectives have a hyphen (-).

It was very much a **last-minute** decision to go, but the kids loved it and were very **well behaved**.

My cousin is very **absent-minded**. We have a **long-standing** joke that whenever we meet, he pretends he doesn't know me.

These boots are **worn out** now, but they've been incredibly **hard-wearing**.

I have an uncle who is very **narrow-minded** and **self-righteous**. He thinks I'm **bad-tempered**, but it's only him who makes me angry; we argue all the time.

GLOSSARY

last-minute	happening at the last possible moment
well behaved	(compounds with <i>well</i> are hyphenated before a noun but not after a noun) behaving in a way that people think is correct and polite: a well-behaved child
long-standing	that has existed or lasted for a long time
worn out	1 (of a thing) no longer useful because it has been used so much 2 (of a person) exhausted from work or exercise
hard-wearing	(of a product) remaining in good condition for a long time
self-righteous	believing that what you say or do is right and other people are wrong
bad-tempered	often angry and easily annoyed

SPOTLIGHT adjectives with *-minded*

You can be **narrow-minded** (= not willing to listen to the ideas and opinions of others) **OPP broad-minded, open-minded**; **absent-minded** (= forgetful); or **single-minded** (= thinking in a concentrated way about sth and determined to achieve it).

5 Answer the questions.

- If something is worn out, is it *no use* or *very comfortable*?
- If something is last-minute, is it *very quick* or *at the last possible moment*?
- If someone is single-minded, are they *determined* or *closed to new ideas*?
- If something is hard-wearing, is it *uncomfortable* or does it *last a long time*?
- If someone is worn out, are they *exhausted* or *unhealthy*?
- If someone is absent-minded, are they *stupid* or *forgetful*?

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

6 Form six compound adjectives using words from the box.

long	worn	behaved	standing	minded	self
tempered	well	narrow	bad	righteous	out

.....

.....

7 Complete the dialogues with a suitable compound adjective.

- He always thinks he's right, doesn't he? ~ Yes, he's very
- Had you planned to go? ~ No, it was a decision.
- Do you often meet up? ~ Yes, we have a arrangement.
- She's very determined, isn't she? ~ Yes, she's extremely
- He gets angry very easily. ~ I know, he's a very man.
- Your parents are always open to ideas. ~ Yes, they're very

8 Can you complete these compound adjectives using either *self* or *well*?

..... known	..... confident	..... employed
..... behaved	..... dressed	..... conscious
..... service	..... informed	



TEST YOURSELF

Using a dictionary

A learner's dictionary includes a wide range of information that will help you to expand your vocabulary and use words more effectively when you speak and write. Look at these entries from the *Oxford Advanced Learner's Dictionary*.

The key (🔑) tells you that **reflect** is in the Oxford 3000 and is an important word.

re-reflect 🔑 B1 🗣️ /rɪ'flekt/ verb 1 🔑 B1 [T, usually pas-sive] to show the image of sb/sth on the surface of sth such as a mirror, water or glass: **be reflected (in sth)** His face was reflected in the mirror. ◊ She could see herself reflected in his eyes. 2 🔑 B1 [T, I] to throw back light, heat, sound, ... work. 4 🔑 B2 [I, T] to think carefully and deeply about sth: Before I decide, I need time to reflect. ◊ **~ on/upon sth** She was left to reflect on the implications of her decision. ...

The numbers tell you that **reflect** has different meanings.

Prepositions that follow **reflect** are shown in bold.

The words before the definition give a general idea of the different meanings of **count**.

ab-sorb 🗣️+ B2 /əb'zɔ:b; NAmE-'zɔ:rb/ verb
 • LIQUID/GAS 1 🔑+ B2 to take in a liquid, gas or other sub-
 ...
 • INFORMATION 4 🔑+ C1 ~ sth to take sth into the mind and learn or understand it (SYN take in): It's a lot of information to absorb all at once.
 ...

Dictionaries often provide synonyms (**take sth in** is a synonym for one meaning of **absorb**) and opposites: these help you to expand your vocabulary.

The phrases in bold show common phrasal structures and/or collocations: they will help you to use **favour** naturally in typical contexts.

Propose is a formal word and more common in written English.

pro-pose 🔑 B2 🗣️ /prə'pəʊz/ verb
 • SUGGEST PLAN 1 🔑 B2 [T] (formal) to suggest a plan, an idea, etc. for people to think about and decide on: ~ sth The ...
 ~ that... She proposed that the book be banned. ◊ (BrE also) She proposed that the book should be banned. ◊ it is proposed that... It was proposed that the president be elected for a period of two years. ◊ ~ doing sth He proposed changing the name of the company. ◊ it is proposed to do sth It was proposed to pay the money from public funds.

It is followed by a noun, a **that** clause, or an **-ing** form, so you cannot say: ~~He proposed us to go.~~

The grammar of each word is labelled, e.g. whether a noun is countable [C], uncountable [U], plural, or usually plural (as here), etc.

Idioms and phrasal verbs are listed at the end of the entry.

IDM **no comment** (said in reply to a question, usually from a journalist) I have nothing to say about that: 'Will you resign, sir?' 'No comment!'

PHRV **count a gainst sb** | **count sth a gainst sb** to be considered or to consider sth to be a disadvantage in sb: For that job her lack of experience may count against her. **count down (to sth)** to think about a future event with ...

circ-um-stance 🔑 B2 🗣️ /'sɜ:kəmstəns, -stəns, -stæns; NAmE-'sɜ:kəmstæns/ noun 1 🔑 B2 [C, usually pl.] the conditions and facts that are connected with and affect a situation, an event or an action: Police said there were no suspicious circumstances surrounding the boy's death. ◊ **under... circumstances** Under normal circumstances, your white blood cells are able to fight infections. ◊ **in... circumstances** The company reserves the right to cancel this agreement in certain circumstances. ◊ In exceptional circumstances, detainees could be denied access to a lawyer. ...

1 Complete the sentences with the correct verb, and use the numbers opposite to say which meaning is being used.

- 1 There were about twelve on the bus, not the teachers.
- 2 I think she'll have to go away and on what we've said to her.
- 3 There's no liquid at the bottom because the sponge has all the juice.
- 4 From the list, I have fifteen who still haven't replied to the invitation.
- 5 There was too much information to in one session; it was impossible.
- 6 In this game, one person closes their eyes and up to 50, while the others hide.
- 7 He was standing behind me, but I could see his face in the water.

2 Complete the sentences with a word from the opposite page.

- 1 Sam, could you me a favour? ~ Sure. What is it?
- 2 How many people were there? ~ Lots, but I didn't actually them.
- 3 There was so much information, I couldn't it all in.
- 4 I only went to the party as a to Anne.
- 5 Prime Minister, do you have anything to say? ~ No
- 6 You can change the date in certain
- 7 Could I ask a ? ~ Yes, of course. What do you want?
- 8 I'm sure Bob will do it. He me a favour.

3 Cross out the grammar mistake in each sentence and write the corrections at the end.

- 1 We could see our faces reflected on the water.
- 2 She proposed to leave the children behind.
- 3 You can take dogs into shops in certain circumstance.
- 4 There were ten people there, no counting the two of us.
- 5 I'll need to reflect in what he said.
- 6 He proposed us to take the car.

4 Use the APP to complete these sentences. You will find the answers in the full dictionary entries for the words shown on the opposite page.

- 1 I myself lucky to have a job that I really enjoy.
- 2 I'm favour equal pay.
- 3 Under the, I would prefer not to say anything.
- 4 The whole incident badly on everyone involved.
- 5 You can email us or leave a on our website.
- 6 When you buy someone a present, it's the thought that

5 Look up these words in the APP. What special information is given for each one? Write an example sentence for each.

- inform
- observe
- finding
- immune

6 ABOUT YOUR DICTIONARY Look in the APP at the full entry for a very common word such as face, head or take. Note down five or six new collocations, phrases, or phrasal verbs that include the target word.

.....

.....

.....

TEST YOURSELF

A Physical features



My little niece Keira is so **cute**. She's got **chubby cheeks**¹ and huge brown eyes.

My sister Jessica is a bit **skinny** and **wears** a lot of **make-up**.

Sophie is **gorgeous**, with a great **figure**, and always looks very **glamorous**.

One of my neighbours is **bald**², **overweight** and has a **hideous tattoo**³.

My gran's **getting on for** 85 and has quite a few **wrinkles**⁴ now.

GLOSSARY

cute pretty and attractive, often used to describe babies, puppies, etc.

chubby slightly fat, but in an attractive way
skinny inf too thin (**slim** and **slender** are 'thin' in an attractive way.)

make-up cream, powder, etc. that you put on your face to make you look more attractive:
wear make-up

gorgeous inf very beautiful and attractive **SYN stunning**
figure the shape of a person's body
glamorous appearing more exciting and attractive than ordinary people

overweight rather fat

hideous very ugly

be getting on for sth be nearly a particular age, time or number:
*It's **getting on for** midnight.*

1 Would you be **happy**, **unhappy** or **not sure** to be described in these ways?

bald chubby cute full of wrinkles glamorous gorgeous hideous overweight skinny slim stunning

HAPPY: UNHAPPY: NOT SURE:

2 Find six pairs of words in the box and explain the connection.

chubby gorgeous overweight wrinkles babies wear
cute skin make-up cheeks stunning fat

.....
.....
.....

3 Complete the sentences.

- 1 My brother has now got a of a heart on his chest. I think it's horrible.
- 2 My mother's 50, but still has a great
- 3 Most babies seem to have a round face and chubby
- 4 I want people to think I'm, but not too skinny.
- 5 He's got a few now he's in his 70s, but I think they give his face character.
- 6 There's a picture of the two kittens asleep on a chair. They look very
- 7 My sister's boyfriends are usually quite ugly, but the new one is really
- 8 Film stars always look so, don't they? I'm sure they're different in real life.
- 9 My best friend Amelia is, I wish I was that beautiful.
- 10 I don't much make-up these days.



TEST YOURSELF

B Clothes and appearance

DRESS FOR YOUR SHAPE

The **key** to dressing for your body shape is to **enhance** your best **features** and cleverly **conceal** the not so good ones. Here are a few **guidelines**:

- Wearing dark colours or **vertical stripes**¹ will **create the illusion** of being slimmer.
- For women, **high heels**² are **flattering** because they **exaggerate** the length of their legs.
- If you are pear-shaped (with narrow shoulders and **broad hips**³), jeans that sit below the **waist**⁴ are flattering, as they **draw attention to** the waistline and make your bottom look smaller.



GLOSSARY

key to sth	the thing that makes you able to understand or achieve sth	create an illusion (of sth)	make sth appear true, which in fact is false
enhance	increase or improve the quality, value or status of sth	flattering	making sb look more attractive OPP unflattering
feature	a part of sb's face or body	exaggerate	make sth seem bigger, better, worse or more important than it really is exaggeration n
conceal formal	hide sth	broad	wide: broad shoulders/hips OPP narrow (We use wide more to talk about distance and geographical areas: <i>The room was 4 metres wide.</i>)
guidelines	information that can help you make a decision or form an opinion	draw (sb's) attention to sth	make sb notice sth
vertical	OPP horizontal —————		

4 Underline the main stress on each word. Use the APP to help you.

conceal create enhance exaggerate exaggeration guidelines horizontal illusion vertical

5 Circle the correct answer.

- 1 If you create an illusion, you make something appear **true / false**.
- 2 Guidelines usually **stop you doing something / help you**.
- 3 Enhancing something is a **positive / negative** change.
- 4 Lines that go up and down are **horizontal / vertical**.
- 5 If you exaggerate something, you make it seem **more / less** important than it really is.
- 6 People came to the music festival from a **broad / wide** area.
- 7 If you wear something that is flattering, it makes you look **worse / better** than usual.
- 8 If you conceal something, others **can / can't** see it.

6 Complete the sentences.

- 1 The right clothes can show off your best _____, e.g. long legs or a slim waist.
- 2 I don't look good in jeans: my waist is quite small but I've got broad _____.
- 3 Clothes with vertical _____ make you look slimmer; high _____ make you taller.
- 4 The _____ to her success is talent, not good looks!
- 5 He wears a hat because he doesn't want to _____ attention to the fact he's bald.
- 6 To say he's the best-looking man in the world is a bit of an _____.
- 7 He's getting fat but he tries to _____ it by wearing very loose jackets.
- 8 Those trousers are very _____: they make her look fat.
- 9 I've got _____ shoulders, but quite a small _____. I've never put on much weight.
- 10 I think it's useful when fashion experts give you _____ on how to dress.



TEST YOURSELF

A Reading the signs



BODY LANGUAGE can tell you a lot, but if you **jump to conclusions** when you are trying to **interpret** a particular **gesture**, you may **misinterpret** what it means. For example, people who look away to avoid **eye contact** may **not necessarily** be lying: they could just be very shy. To understand body

language, therefore, we need to **observe** a **combination** of behaviour. With lying, for example, **look out for** any of these:

- avoiding eye contact
- **sweating** a lot
- **going red**
- **biting fingernails**¹
- **constantly** moving about

GLOSSARY

jump to conclusions	make a decision about sth too quickly, before you have thought about all the facts	observe formal	see or notice sth. An observant person is good at noticing things. observation <i>n</i>
interpret	decide that sth has a particular meaning	combination	two or more things that exist or are put together
gesture	a body movement you make to show a particular meaning	look out for sth/sb	look and try to see or find sth/sb
eye contact	looking into another person's eyes	sweat	If you sweat , water appears on the surface of your skin because you are hot or nervous. sweat <i>n</i>
not necessarily	used to say that sth is possibly true but is not always true	go red	become red in the face, often when you're embarrassed SYN blush
		constantly	all the time or very frequently

1 Good or bad? Write G or B.

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1 He sweats a great deal. | 5 He jumps to conclusions. |
| 2 She goes red all the time. | 6 She's very observant. |
| 3 She has strong powers of observation. | 7 He always makes eye contact. |
| 4 She never bites her fingernails. | 8 He misinterprets what people say. |

2 Complete the sentences with a suitable word.

- 1 You should stop and think before to conclusions.
- 2 The teacher said she'd out for more articles on body language.
- 3 In groups, I like to sit and listen, so I can how people react to each other.
- 4 I used to bite my a lot, but not any more.
- 5 Is it difficult to someone's body language if you don't know them well?
- 6 If you **go red**, does it mean you're angry? ~ No, not
- 7 I use hand a lot. Sometimes it annoys people.
- 8 The increase in the number of students is the result of a of different factors.
- 9 It was so hot in the room, I was starting to
- 10 I move my feet when I'm nervous – I can't stop it.

3 ABOUT YOU Write answers to the questions, or talk to another student.

- 1 Do you use lots of gestures? If so, what type?
- 2 Do you think you are good at making eye contact with people?
- 3 Do you think you are observant? For example, do you notice what people are wearing?
- 4 Do you ever bite your fingernails? If so, why?
- 5 Do you blush easily? If so, does it worry you?
- 6 Do you like sitting and observing people when you are in public places? If so, why?



TEST YOURSELF

B Interpreting gestures

Here are some common interpretations of gestures, but remember the danger of **making generalizations about** body language.



1 A clenched fist¹ often shows anger.

2 People who fold their arms² and cross their legs³ may be defensive, and may be signalling the fact that they disagree with you.

3 People who lean towards⁴ each other are displaying an interest in one another.

4 Women who fancy someone often touch their hair. Women also lift their heads to show more of their neck when they're flirting.

GLOSSARY

make generalizations (about sth)

make general statements about sth that may only be based on a few examples

anger

the state of being *angry*

defensive

showing that you feel sb is criticizing you

signal

If you **signal** sth, you do sth that sends a particular message. **signal** *n*

display

show signs of sth **display** *n*

fancy *inf*

be sexually attracted to sb

flirt (with sb)

behave towards sb as if you find them sexually attractive, but not in a serious way

4 Cross out the wrong word.

1 flirt *with / by* someone

2 *make / do* generalizations

3 a clenched *hand / fist*

4 cross your *body / legs*

5 lean *by / towards* somebody

6 fold your *arms / legs*

7 send a *signal / display*

8 fancy *someone / with someone*

5 Complete the sentences.

1 Both girls like Conrad, and they're always with him.

2 She towards him and whispered something in his ear. I think she him.

3 If you say negative things about his work, he becomes a bit

4 I think I often my arms and my legs when I'm sitting.

5 A clenched sometimes indicates, but footballers also do it when they are happy because they've just scored a goal.

6 Certain gestures between couples clearly that they fancy each other.

7 Hand and body gestures can mean different things in different countries, so it can be dangerous to make about their meaning.

8 Even when he's angry, he doesn't really any signs of emotion.

6 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or talk to another student.

1 Do you often fold your arms or cross your legs? If so, why?

2 Do you think you lean towards people to show you are interested?

3 Do you think you flirt much?

4 If you fancy someone, what gestures do you make?



TEST YOURSELF



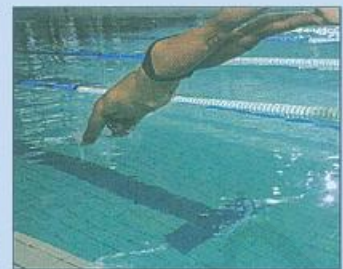
1 He's **crawling** along the floor.



2 She's **kneeling (down) and praying**.



3 She **spilt** the coffee.



4 He's **diving into** the water.



5 He's **sweeping** the floor.



6 She's **shrugging** her shoulders.



7 She's **putting on** lipstick.



8 He's **leaning against** a wall.



9 He's **dragging** the **cabinet** along the floor.



10 She's **tearing** a piece of paper in half.



11 He's **plugging it in**.



12 She's **combing** her hair.



13 She's **folding** the **blanket** in half.



14 He's **begging for** money.



15 He's **sewing on** a **button**.



16 He's **nodding** his head.



17 She's **screwing it** into the wall.



SPOTLIGHT *nod and shake your head*

In some countries, including Britain, you can **nod your head** (= move it up and down) to say 'yes', and **shake your head** (= move it from side to side) to say 'no'.

1 Is the pronunciation of the underlined letters the same or different? Write S or D. Use the APP to help you.

- | | | | | | |
|---|----------------------------------|-------|----|----------------------------------|-------|
| 1 | put/sh <u>ru</u> g | ..... | 6 | se <u>w</u> / scre <u>w</u> | ..... |
| 2 | sh <u>ru</u> g / bu <u>tt</u> on | ..... | 7 | blan <u>ke</u> t / sp <u>ill</u> | ..... |
| 3 | co <u>mb</u> / no <u>d</u> | ..... | 8 | se <u>w</u> / co <u>mb</u> | ..... |
| 4 | le <u>a</u> n / te <u>a</u> r v | ..... | 9 | le <u>a</u> n / le <u>a</u> nt | ..... |
| 5 | swee <u>p</u> / knee <u>l</u> | ..... | 10 | knee <u>l</u> / co <u>mb</u> | ..... |

2 Write the past tense and the past participle of these verbs.

- | | | | | | |
|---|-------|-------|----|-------|-------|
| 1 | beg | ..... | 6 | kneel | ..... |
| 2 | sweep | ..... | 7 | sew | ..... |
| 3 | tear | ..... | 8 | put | ..... |
| 4 | shake | ..... | 9 | lean | ..... |
| 5 | nod | ..... | 10 | spill | ..... |

3 Complete the phrases.

- | | | | | | | | |
|---|----------------|-------|----------|---|-------|-------|------------|
| 1 | fold something | ..... | half | 5 | plug | ..... | the kettle |
| 2 | lean | ..... | the wall | 6 | kneel | ..... |  |
| 3 | dive | ..... | the lake | 7 | sew | ..... | a button |
| 4 | put | ..... | lipstick | 8 | beg | ..... | money |

4 Underline the correct answer.

- | | | | |
|---|--|----|---|
| 1 | He was leaning against a <u>piece of paper</u> / door. | 6 | Kneel down on the <u>blanket</u> / kettle. |
| 2 | She folded the <u>towel</u> / cabinet in half. | 7 | She dived into the <u>water</u> / floor. |
| 3 | He dragged the <u>body</u> / wall to the door. | 8 | He spilt the <u>drinks</u> / blanket. |
| 4 | I'm going to put on my <u>hair</u> / lipstick. | 9 | She shrugged her <u>legs</u> / shoulders. |
| 5 | Could you plug in the <u>toaster</u> / button? | 10 | He crawled along the <u>water</u> / carpet. |

5 Complete the sentences.

- There are more and more homeless people for money in the streets.
- People to God in a church.
- I asked Dad if I could go, but he just his head.
- She's only ten months, so she's still along the floor most of the time.
- I tried to in the kettle, but there seems to be a problem with the
- We all down on the floor to try and find my wife's lost contact lens.
- Marta was so angry, she his letter in half and threw it in the bin.
- Could you help me these sheets?
- I tried to the chest of drawers but it damaged the floor.
- He was his head, so I assumed it was OK to go in.

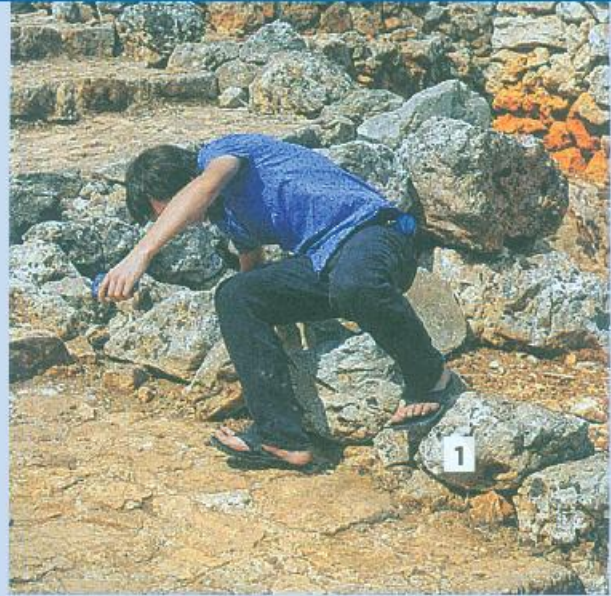
6 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or talk to another student.

- Do you ever (or often) spill things?
- How often do you comb your hair?
- Do you ever wear lipstick?
- Are you good at sewing?
- Do you pray? If so, what do you pray for?
- Can you dive well?
- In your country, if you nod your head, does it mean 'yes'?
- In your country, are there a lot of people begging for money?
- In your country do you use kettles to boil water for tea or coffee?



A Ways of moving

It was a nice day so we decided to **go for a stroll**.
 I just spent the day **wandering** around town.
 We were **hiking** in the countryside, and I **stumbled**¹ on a rocky bit of path.
 The soldiers **marched** along the street.
 The police **charged** across the square towards the protesters.
 I **rushed** to catch my train.
 Two policemen **chased** the robber across the park.
 I **ran flat out** to get home before the others.



GLOSSARY

stroll	a slow, relaxed walk: go for a stroll ; stroll v
wander (around/about)	walk somewhere slowly, often without any particular aim or in any particular direction
hike	walk a long way in the country: go hiking
stumble (over/on sth)	hit your foot against sth when you are walking or running and almost fall over SYN trip (over)
march	walk fairly quickly with regular steps (like a soldier)
charge	run straight at sb/sth in a noisy or aggressive way
rush	move or do sth at great speed, usually for an important reason or because you are late for sth
chase	run after sb/sth in order to catch them SYN run after sb/sth

SPOTLIGHT *idioms and phrasal verbs with run*

- run flat out** run as fast as you can
- run off with sth** take or steal sth:
 - The thief **ran off with** my handbag.
- run sb/sth over** hit sb/sth with a vehicle:
 - I **ran over** the child's toy.
- run away** escape from somewhere:
 - The boy threw a stone then **ran away**.

1 Answer the questions.

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1 Who often marches? | 5 Why do people rush? |
| 2 Who might run off with something? | 6 Why do people trip over things? |
| 3 Who might chase after people? | 7 Why do people wander around? |
| 4 What animals sometimes charge at people? | 8 Where do people go hiking? |

2 Correct any mistakes in the underlined verbs. Be careful: the answer may be correct.

- 1 We often go chasing in the countryside at the weekend.
- 2 About 100 angry demonstrators stumbled down the street.
- 3 The car appeared suddenly, so I had to stroll across the road.
- 4 I tripped over and hurt my ankle.
- 5 He was terribly upset when he marched over the cat.
- 6 My dog loves to charge rabbits.
- 7 It was a very hot humid day so we just ran flat out through the park.
- 8 The teenager ran away because she was unhappy living at home.

3 Complete the sentences.

- 1 When Jordan heard about his brother's accident, he to the hospital.
- 2 I and fell into some long wet grass.
- 3 We had lots of time so we decided to go for a
- 4 They broke into the shop then with the money across the park.
- 5 The police car was a black BMW through the streets at great speed.
- 6 My train was just leaving, and I had to run to catch it.
- 7 We had nothing to do so we just around for a couple of hours.

TEST YOURSELF

B Physical exercise

My 20-minute workout

I'm not as **agile** as I used to be, and I was beginning to feel quite **stiff** early in the morning, so I asked a friend to **devise** a workout routine for me. First I **warm up** with some **stretching** and **bending**, then I go on to more **demanding** activities, like **press-ups** to **strengthen** my muscles. But the key for me is variety; I like a **constant** change of activity to stay **motivated**. It's also **vital** that you finish by **warming down** with fairly gentle activities.



GLOSSARY

workout	a period of physical exercise you do to keep fit work out v
agile	able to move quickly and easily agility n
stiff	feeling some pain, and unable to move easily
devise	invent a method or plan of doing sth SYN think sth up
warm up	do physical activities to prepare the muscles for exercise OPP warm down
bend	move your body forwards and downwards bent adj
demanding	(used about a task) needing a lot of effort or skill
constant	happening or existing all the time or again and again
motivated	wanting to do sth badly, often for a reason motivation n
vital	extremely important SYN essential, crucial

SPOTLIGHT verbs with -en

You can add **-(e)n** to a few nouns and some adjectives to form verbs.

- I want to **strengthen** my arms. (= make them stronger)
- They plan to **widen** the road. (= make it wider)
- The illness has **weakened** him. (= made him weaker)

4 Put these words in three groups according to the pronunciation of the letter 'i'. Use the APP to help you.

stiff agile agility crucial motivated devise demanding widen essential vital

5 Circle the correct answer(s). Sometimes both answers are correct.

- 1 I worked in the garden yesterday, so I feel a bit **stiff** / **demanding** today.
- 2 It's easier to touch your toes if you **stretch** / **bend** your knees.
- 3 It's **vital** / **crucial** that you do exercises that are suitable for you.
- 4 You should **warm up** / **down** when you have finished your exercises.
- 5 My brother **thought up** / **devised** this new training method last year.
- 6 I can reach the ceiling if I **stretch** / **bend** my arms.
- 7 I do a short **workout** / **press-up** every morning.
- 8 I can't do certain activities because I'm not **demanding** / **agile** enough.

6 Complete the sentences.

- 1 I couldn't finish my exercises because of the phone calls I was getting.
- 2 I want to a way of doing more exercise during my working day.
- 3 If I forwards quickly, I get a bit of a pain in my back.
- 4 My brother does 30 every day. He wants to stay fit so is very
- 5 You must do this exercise with your knees, not straight.
- 6 I've got a bad knee so I need to the muscles to give my knee more support.
- 7 My brother usually in the gym two or three times a week.
- 8 The problem is that a lot of people don't have the to exercise regularly.
- 9 I want to run a marathon next year, but I know it will be very
- 10 I had much more when I was younger. Now I feel stiff when I get up.



TEST YOURSELF

A Are computers bad for your eyesight?

eyesight

Many of us spend hours every day working at a computer. As a result, **eye strain** and **blurred vision** are common complaints. Most people also **blink** less frequently when they are **concentrating**, resulting in poor **tear** production, which can **irritate** the eyes. Here's how you can change your computer use and **ease** your **discomfort**:

- ▶ **adjust** your computer screen so that it is 50-65 cm from your eyes, just below eye level
- ▶ adjust the lighting to **eliminate** any very bright lights
- ▶ take frequent breaks, blink often to stop your eyes becoming dry, and let your eye muscles relax by looking into the distance every 15 minutes.

Remember: if a problem continues, see an **optician**.

GLOSSARY

eyesight	the ability to see ALSO sight SYN vision; good/poor eyesight
strain	an injury in part of your body often from using it too much: eye strain, back strain
blurred vision	If your vision is blurred , you cannot see clearly.
blink	shut and open your eyes quickly
concentrate	give all your attention or effort to sth concentration n
tear	a drop of liquid that comes out of your eye when you cry
irritate	cause a part of the body to be painful or sore irritation n
ease	make sth less unpleasant or painful
discomfort	a slight feeling of pain and being uncomfortable
adjust	change sth slightly to make it more suitable adjustment n
eliminate	remove or get rid of sth elimination n
optician	a person whose job is to test people's eyes, sell glasses, etc. An optician's is a shop where an optician works.

1 The pronunciation of the letter 'i' is the same as in *bit* in eight of the cases underlined. Which four are different? Use the APP to help you.

irritate vision blink optician strain eliminate eyesight discomfort

2 Circle the correct word(s). Be careful: sometimes both words are possible.

- 1 Did you know that pigs often have really poor sight / vision?
- 2 The optician can eliminate / adjust your glasses if they are too loose.
- 3 We are currently trying to eliminate / ease theft from our offices.
- 4 I can get eye strain if I irritate / concentrate for too long without taking a break.
- 5 These eye drops should adjust / ease the pain.
- 6 I could see a strain / tear in the corner of her eye.
- 7 If you get any discomfort / irritation, go and get your eyes checked.
- 8 She got a new pair of glasses from the doctor's / optician's.

3 One word is missing in each line. What is it, and where does it go?

- 1 Sore, tired or burning eyes are symptoms of eye.
- 2 I went to the chemist's to get some stuff to the pain.
- 3 I think these glasses will be fine with a small.
- 4 Even with glasses, there are some problems you can't completely.
- 5 The said I needed new glasses.
- 6 Bright lights for a period of time can your eyes.
- 7 People's vision can be a bit if they drink too much alcohol.
- 8 There were in her eyes when she told me the sad news.
- 9 The flash of a camera makes a lot of people.
- 10 If you work too long, tiredness will affect your powers of.

4 **ABOUT YOU** Have you suffered from any of these problems? If so, what did you do about it? Write your answer, or talk to another student.



TEST YOURSELF

B A peaceful sight

We stood at the top of the hill for ages, **gazing** at the **spectacular** view below. In the distance, the port was **barely visible** through the early morning **mist**, but we could just **make out** the island. As we drove back down, I **caught a glimpse of** a waterfall and asked Marcello to stop. Then, all of a sudden, a young **deer** appeared with its mother. They **stood** completely **still**, looking at us **suspiciously**, then ran off and **vanished into thin air**.



GLOSSARY

gaze at sb/sth	look at sb/sth for a long time because you are interested in them/it or are thinking about sth else gaze <i>n</i>
spectacular	very impressive to see
barely	only with great difficulty or effort SYN only just
visible	Sth that is visible can be seen. OPP invisible
mist	a thin cloud just above the ground making it difficult to see misty <i>adj</i>
make sth/sb out	see, hear or understand sth/sb with difficulty
stand still	stand without moving at all: keep/stay/sit still
suspiciously	carefully because you think there may be sth wrong or dishonest suspicious <i>adj</i> ; suspicion <i>n</i>
vanish	disappear vanish into thin air disappear suddenly

SPOTLIGHT *ways of seeing*

If you **catch a glimpse of sth/sb**, you see it/them for a very short time and not clearly or completely. If you **glance at sb/sth**, you look at them/it for a moment. If you **spot sb/sth**, you see or notice sb/sth, especially suddenly or when it is not easy to do.

- We **caught a glimpse of** the actress as she left the theatre.
- I **glanced at** my watch to see if it was time to go.
- I **spotted** several mistakes in my work just before I handed it in.

5 Correct the spelling mistake(s) in each sentence.

- | | |
|---------------------------------------|--|
| 1 The view was spectacular. | 4 When the bird was stil, it was unvisible. |
| 2 She looked at us suspisiously. | 5 We just caught a glimse of the deer. |
| 3 I could barily see them. | 6 I granced at my friend. |

6 Underline the words which are possible. More than one word is often possible.

- 1 The bottom of the valley was *invisible / misty / suspicious*.
- 2 The castle was *visible / standing still / spectacular*.
- 3 The man was badly dressed and looked *suspicious / spectacular / misty*.
- 4 After an hour, we finally *caught a glimpse of / spotted / glanced at* the rare bird.
- 5 Could you please *stand / wait / keep* still?
- 6 When Lia came in, I quickly *glanced at / gazed at / spotted* John next to me. He smiled.
- 7 We could *suspiciously / only just / barely* see the church in the distance.

7 Rewrite the sentences using the words in capitals. The meaning must stay the same.

- | | | |
|--|-----------|-------|
| 1 He sat without moving while I drew him. | STILL | ..... |
| 2 I was only just able to see the boat on the hprizon. | MAKE | ..... |
| 3 They were both watching me; I don't know why. | GAZE | ..... |
| 4 Those stars can't be seen without a telescope. | INVISIBLE | ..... |
| 5 We could barely see the trees through the mist. | ONLY | ..... |
| 6 After a while I could see Leo in the crowd. | SPOT | ..... |
| 7 The thief ran out of the building and disappeared. | THIN AIR | ..... |
| 8 I briefly saw Blanca as she left the shop. | GLIMPSE | ..... |
| 9 Please don't move. | KEEP | ..... |
| 10 I didn't believe he was telling the truth. | SUSPICION | ..... |

TEST YOURSELF

A Things I don't want to hear

There are noises I love – when someone **bursts out laughing**, or people **cheer** at football matches, for example – but if I went **deaf**, there would also be noises I wouldn't miss:

- **background noise** of cars, machines, etc. that can be so **irritating**
- the sound of a child **in tears**
- the sound of someone **sneezing**¹ – that makes me worry I will be the next person to **catch their cold**.
- someone **whispering** behind me – I imagine they are talking about me!
- **overhearing** something unpleasant that I wasn't meant to hear
- someone **sighing**
- people **booing** at sports events or other occasions – it's very rude.
- my partner **snoring**!



GLOSSARY

burst out laughing	suddenly start laughing, often loudly	catch a cold	get an illness: catch a cold / (the) flu
cheer	shout to show that you like sth or to encourage sb in a sporting event, etc. OPP boo	whisper	speak very quietly in sb's ear so others cannot hear whisper n: He spoke in a whisper.
deaf	unable to hear. Blind is unable to see.	overhear	hear what sb is saying, by accident, when they are speaking to sb else
background noise	sounds or noise that can be heard but aren't the centre of attention and are often unwanted	sigh	let out a long deep breath to show you are tired, sad, disappointed, etc.
irritating	annoying; making you angry	snore	breathe noisily through your nose and mouth when you are asleep
in tears	crying		

1 Correct the mistake in each sentence.

- 1 There was a lot of background noises.
- 2 We burst out laugh.
- 3 The poor boy was into tears.
- 4 Did you overhere what she said?
- 5 Please stop wispering like that.
- 6 My husband snorts in his sleep.

2 Find five phrases from the words in the box

background in catch in a burst out whisper tears laughing noise a cold

.....

.....

3 Complete the sentences with a suitable word or phrase.

- 1 When you have a cold, you often a lot.
- 2 My next-door neighbour has been for several years, and now has a guide dog.
- 3 The poor man can't hear a thing: he's been for years.
- 4 If you spend time with someone with a cold, you might their cold.
- 5 If you don't want someone to hear what you are saying, you should
- 6 Most people stood up and when Liam won, but a couple It was a bit embarrassing.
- 7 One or two people have told me I in my sleep.
- 8 When my mother like that, I can tell she's disappointed.
- 9 I two people on the bus talking about unpleasant noises. It was quite funny.
- 10 A lot of young people talk very quickly and not very clearly. It's very



TEST YOURSELF

A Ways of touching



1 She **squeezed** the bottle.



2 I **tapped** him on the shoulder.



3 He **grabbed** my bag.



4 She **pinched** my arm.



5 He **punched** him.



6 The cat **scratched** me.



7 They **hugged** each other.



8 She **slapped** his face.



9 She **rubbed** the suntan lotion on.

SPOTLIGHT *verbs and nouns*

Some of these verbs can be used as nouns with the same meaning.

- She **gave** him **a punch/slap** on the arm.
- He **gave** her hand **a squeeze**.
- **Give** him **a tap** on the shoulder.
- I **got** **a scratch** on the car.

1 Can you do this with one finger? Write Yes or No.

- | | | | |
|-------------------------|-------|-------------------------------|-------|
| 1 hug someone | ..... | 5 scratch someone | ..... |
| 2 rub someone/something | ..... | 6 tap someone on the shoulder | ..... |
| 3 grab something | ..... | 7 slap someone | ..... |
| 4 pinch someone | ..... | 8 punch something | ..... |

2 Answer the questions. Write Yes or No.

- 1 If you punch someone, do they usually laugh?
- 2 If you hug someone, are you trying to hurt them?
- 3 If you tap someone on the shoulder, are you trying to get their attention?
- 4 If you scratch your car, are you happy about it?
- 5 If you grab something, do you do it quickly?
- 6 If you pinch someone, is it nice?
- 7 If you slap someone, does it often hurt?
- 8 Can you squeeze a bottle of milk?

3 Complete the sentences.

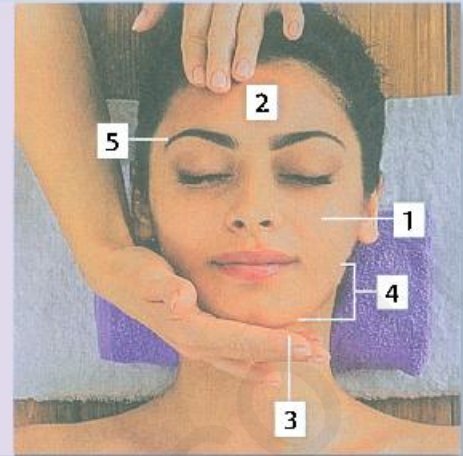
- 1 He her hand until it started to hurt.
- 2 Someone me a on the shoulder, so I turned round.
- 3 The youth the woman's purse and ran off down the road.
- 4 When Sam left for his trip, he said goodbye to his wife and her a
- 5 People were horrified when the mother the child round the face.
- 6 Oliver his hands to keep warm.
- 7 The man Joe in the stomach, and he dropped to the floor.
- 8 Don't your mosquito bites – they'll start to bleed.



B Massage

A Simple Face Massage

- 1 Start by **gently stroking** the whole face. With both hands, **slide** up the neck, across the **cheeks**¹, then up and over the **forehead**². **Apply gentle pressure** to the sides of the head.
- 2 **Stimulate** the skin by gently **patting** the cheeks and neck.
- 3 Use your **fingertips**³ to **lightly massage** the skin around the **jaw**⁴.
- 4 To **release tension** around the eyes, **firmly** press down on the **eyebrows**⁵ with your fingertips.
- 5 Massage the **scalp** **vigorously** as if shampooing your hair.



GLOSSARY

massage	(see picture): have a massage ; massage v
stroke	move your hand over sb's skin, hair, etc. gently and slowly
slide	move or make sth move smoothly along a surface
apply pressure (to sth)	press on sth hard with your hand, foot, etc.
stimulate	make a part of the body or skin more active
pat	touch sb/sth gently a number of times with a flat hand or both hands
tension	You have tension if your muscles are tight and not relaxed and you need to release (= free) the tension.
scalp	the skin that covers the part of the head where the hair grows

SPOTLIGHT *adverbs of manner*

Gently and **lightly** are soft, relaxed movements. **Firmly** is much stronger. If you move your hands **steadily**, you make regular movements. **Vigorously** means in a very energetic and active way. **SYN energetically.**

4 Are these actions usually gentle, or can they be quite vigorous?

stroke massage slide apply pressure pat stimulate

GENTLE:

USUALLY VIGOROUS:

5 Cover the text and look at the face. What does each number identify?

- 1 3 5
- 2 4

6 Complete the sentences.

- 1 I often my forehead, cheeks and neck; it stimulates the skin.
- 2 I love going to have a – it's so relaxing.
- 3 She sat quietly, gently the cat.
- 4 The physio just used his fingertips to apply to the back of my neck.
- 5 When the hairdresser washes my hair, he massages my quite
- 6 The doctor pressure to the wound to stop the bleeding.
- 7 Don't use the whole of your fingers for massage, just the
- 8 I think a massage is one of the best ways to release in your body.
- 9 Massage and exercise help to blood circulation in the body.
- 10 The doors open automatically as you approach.
- 11 I tapped him on the shoulder to get his attention.
- 12 I pressed the button but still nothing happened.

TEST YOURSELF

A Types of illness



rash



lungs



breast

MORE MINOR

hay fever: an illness affecting the eyes, nose and throat, caused by breathing in **pollen**

a rash: an area of red spots **commonly** caused by an illness or an allergy

MORE SERIOUS

an allergy: a condition that makes you ill when you eat, touch or breathe certain things that don't normally make people ill, e.g. eating nuts. Allergies can be minor or very serious. **allergic (to sth) adj**

asthma: a condition that gives people breathing difficulties

diabetes: a disease caused by an **inability** to control the level of sugar in the blood

POTENTIALLY FATAL

cancer: e.g. **lung cancer**, **breast cancer**: a very serious illness in which a **lump** grows in the body

a heart attack: a sudden, serious illness when the heart stops working correctly

GLOSSARY

minor	not very big, serious or important
pollen	the powder produced by some plants
commonly	usually; very often; by most people
inability	the fact of not being able to do sth
potentially	that may possibly happen or become sth
fatal	causing or ending in death: a fatal accident
lump	a swelling under the skin which can be small or large

1 Is the pronunciation of the underlined letters the same or different? Write **S** or **D**. Use the **APP** to help you.

- 1 heart breast 3 diabetes fever 5 diabetes minor 7 allergy allergic
 2 allergy rash 4 allergy lung 6 hay fatal 8 pottential asthma

2 Complete the sentences.

- I'm to prawns. I get a on my face if I eat just one.
- Drugs are a used treatment for many illnesses.
- It's clear that smoking increases your risk of lung, which is fatal.
- A friend of mine has a very serious If he eats peanuts, he has a bad reaction.
- I get a bit of hay every summer, but it's only a problem. I don't worry about it.
- If you are seriously overweight, it is a problem: you are more at risk from and, of course, heart
- One of my friends died in a road accident.
- The to control the level of sugar in the blood is very serious.

3 Combine words from the box to make sentences about the illnesses and their causes and symptoms.

hay fever diabetes asthma breast cancer rash
 breathing difficulties allergy sugar pollen lump

.....

.....

.....

.....



B Medicine labels

These tablets must be **dissolved** in water.

For **short-term** use only.

Please read the **enclosed leaflet** before taking these tablets.

DO NOT EXCEED THE STATED DOSE.

Possible **side effects** may include stomach **disorders**.

Discard any remaining solution 60 days after opening the bottle.

If symptoms **persist**, **consult** your doctor.

Do not use after the **expiry date**.

GLOSSARY	
dissolve (in sth)	(of a solid) combine with a liquid and become part of it
short-term	lasting only a short period: a short-term solution <i>OPP</i> long-term: a long-term contract
dose (ALSO dosage)	the amount of a medicine that you take at any one time
enclosed	included inside sth else, usually inside a letter or a packet
leaflet	one or several pages of printed free information about sth
side effect	an extra and usually bad effect that a drug has on you
disorder	illness to a part of the body
discard	get rid of sth you no longer want or need
persist	(especially of sth unpleasant) continue to exist persistent <i>adj</i>
consult	ask sb for some information or advice consultation <i>n</i>
expiry date	the date after which sth should not be used expire <i>v</i>

SPOTLIGHT *exceed and excess*

<p>1 do more of sth than is stated in an order or a law: Don't exceed the stated dose. You shouldn't exceed the speed limit.</p>	<p>2 be greater than a particular number, amount or quality: The cost won't exceed \$5,000. OR The cost won't be in excess of \$5,000.</p>
---	--

- 4 True or false? Write T or F. Correct any false sentences.**
- | | |
|---|---|
| 1 Drugs can have <i>side effects</i> | 5 If something <i>persists</i> , it stops. |
| 2 If something is <i>enclosed</i> , you can't open it. | 6 ' <i>In excess of 50</i> ' is more than 50. |
| 3 You can read a <i>leaflet</i> | 7 You can <i>dissolve</i> sugar in hot water. |
| 4 A <i>disorder</i> means a machine isn't working. | 8 If you <i>consult</i> someone, you disagree with them. |

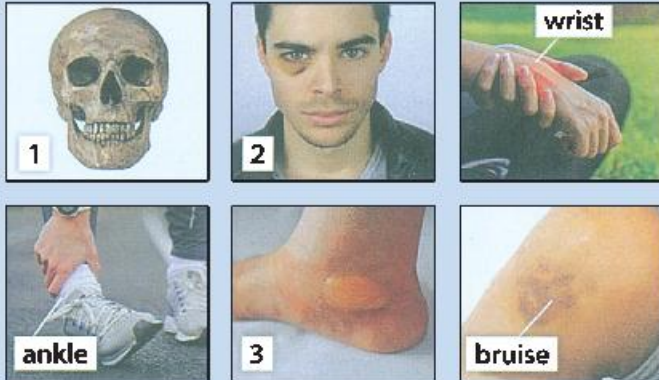
- 5 Add a word to complete an instruction or a common phrase.**
- | | |
|---------------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1 Don't exceed the stated | 4 in of 20 people |
| 2 a long-..... solution | 5 common side |
| 3 the expiry | 6 Read the leaflet. |

- 6 Use one word to complete the sentences on the right with the same meaning as those on the left.**
- | | |
|---|------------------------------------|
| 1 It's all there in the information they provide. | It's all there in the |
| 2 He's got something wrong with his stomach. | He's got a stomach |
| 3 The information is included with this letter. | The information is |
| 4 One teaspoon is the amount you should take. | One teaspoon is the |
| 5 See a doctor if the symptoms don't go away. | See a doctor if the symptoms |
| 6 Don't use after the end of July. | Don't use after the expiry |

- 7 Complete the sentences.**
- You can buy aspirin, which in water; that avoids taking tablets.
 - I've had a cough for weeks now; the doctor thinks I should a specialist.
 - I ought to the contents of this bottle: it's been open for months.
 - The doctor gave me sleeping tablets, but it's only a solution.
 - This is a powerful drug so I mustn't the stated dose.
 - I've already had a with one doctor, but he wasn't very helpful.

 **TEST YOURSELF**

A From head to toe



My cousin **fractured** his skull¹ when he came off his motorbike. He was **unconscious** for several minutes. I once got a **black eye**² in a fight at school. I **dislocated** my shoulder playing rugby. I **sprained** my wrist when I fell off my bike. I **twisted** my ankle running for a bus. I used to get lots of **blisters**³ on my feet from running. I've **bruised** myself **hundreds** of times.

GLOSSARY	
fracture	break a bone or some other hard material
unconscious	in a state like sleep, often because of an injury or an illness OPP conscious
dislocate	put sth (usually a bone) out of its correct position
sprain	injure a part of your body, especially your wrist or ankle, by suddenly bending or turning it SYN twist your ankle (NOT USUALLY twist your wrist)
blister	a swelling on the surface of the skin that is filled with liquid and is often caused by rubbing or burning
bruise	get or make a blue, brown, etc. mark on the skin after sb has fallen, been hit by sth, etc. bruise <i>n</i>
hundreds (of sth) inf	a lot; a large amount: hundreds of things to do SYN masses (of sth)

SPOTLIGHT <i>verbs, nouns and adjective</i>	
A number of the verbs above can also be used as nouns, and some of the past participles from these verbs can be used as adjectives.	
▪ He's got several fractures .	▪ a sprained wrist
▪ I've got a large bruise on my arm.	▪ a twisted ankle
	▪ a dislocated arm

- Answer Yes or No.**
 - Can you talk when you're conscious?
 - Can you twist your eye?
 - Can you sprain your ankle?
 - Can you fracture a fingernail?
 - Can you bruise your hair?
 - Can you dislocate a finger?
 - Can you get a blister on your hand?
 - Can you write when you're unconscious?
- Put the following in order from most serious (1) to least serious (6). Give your reasons.**

a twisted ankle	.....	a dislocated elbow	.....
a fractured skull	.....	a black eye	.....
a bruise on the arm	.....	a blister	.....
- Complete the sentences.**
 - He's injured himself of times playing rugby.
 - The man wasn't moving. I thought he was dead, but in fact he was
 - He told me he got a black when his dog jumped up and hit him in the face.
 - When I my finger, the doctor put it back into position – and it hurt!
 - His arm is black and blue from the he got from falling off the wall.
 - Do you often get on your feet from walking in new shoes?
 - Clara her leg skiing and hasn't been able to walk for weeks.
 - I sprained my, and then the next day I twisted my
- ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or talk to another student.**
 - How many of the injuries at the top of the page have you had?
 - Which of the injuries at the top of the page require a visit to the hospital? Which require a visit to the doctor?

.....

.....

TEST YOURSELF

B First Aid

FIRST AID: To clean a **wound**, you need to **bathe** it **thoroughly**. For a small cut, just put on a **plaster**. For a more serious wound, especially if it is **bleeding** quite a lot, cover it with a clean **dressing** to prevent **infection**, and then hold that **in place** with a **bandage**. Most cuts **heal** within seven days. If a part of the body is **swollen**, apply a bag of frozen peas **wrapped** in a towel to reduce the **swelling**.



GLOSSARY

first aid	simple medical treatment that is given to sb, often before a doctor comes or before the person can be taken to a hospital	bleed	lose blood bleeding n
wound	an injury to a part of your body, especially a cut, and often from a weapon wound v (usually passive)	in place	in the correct or usual position: hold sth in place
bathe	wash part of the body, often for medical reasons	heal	(especially of a cut) become healthy again
thoroughly	in a careful and complete way	swollen	bigger than usual because of an injury or an illness. A swollen arm or leg from an injury may also be blue or purple. swelling n
		wrap	cover or tie sth around an object or part of the body

SPOTLIGHT *infection*

An **infection** is an illness caused by **bacteria** or a **virus**. (Both are small living things that can only be seen through a microscope.) An **infectious** illness or disease travels easily from one person to another.

5 Is the pronunciation of the underlined letters the same or different? Write S or D. Use the APP to help you.

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| 1 bathe <u>ba</u> ndage | 6 <u>wou</u> nd <u>thou</u> ghly |
| 2 ba <u>n</u> dage <u>inf</u> ection | 7 <u>thou</u> ghly <u>inf</u> ectious |
| 3 ba <u>th</u> e <u>pl</u> aster | 8 <u>bo</u> dy <u>sw</u> ollen |
| 4 <u>he</u> al <u>ble</u> ed | 9 <u>wou</u> nd <u>sw</u> ollen |
| 5 <u>v</u> irus <u>inf</u> ection | 10 <u>ba</u> cteria <u>dr</u> essing |

6 Complete the sentences.

- We did a bit of first when I was at school.
- My arm was quite after I fell and bruised it.
- If I hit my nose hard, it often quite a bit.
- It's not a bad cut, so I think it will quite quickly.
- If you want to prevent infection, you need to clean the wound
- Could you put your finger there to hold the dressing in
- An infection can be caused by or a
- He was in the leg when he was attacked by a man with a knife.
- I put a large plaster on the cut to stop the
- If you some packs of ice round the bruise, it will reduce the

7 Test your knowledge of first aid. Answer the questions.

- What is the purpose of doing first aid?
- What is the first thing you should do with a wound?
- What can you put on a small cut?
- Why do you need a clean dressing?
- What is the purpose of a bandage?
- How long does it take for most cuts to heal?
- Why would you wrap frozen peas in a towel?
- What is the main risk with an infectious disease or illness?



TEST YOURSELF

A Personal qualities

Online dating: find your dream partner



Galina's profile:

My friends describe me as a real **extrovert**. I'm an **enthusiastic, talkative** sort of person, but at the same time I love to hear other people's opinions. I'm also quite **decisive** and feel able to **assert myself** in different social situations. I have a very positive **attitude to life**, and I'm **truly passionate** about health and fitness. My sister describes me as a **lively** and **dynamic** person.

GLOSSARY

extrovert	a lively, confident person who enjoys being with other people OPP introvert; extrovert adj, introverted, introvert adj
enthusiastic	feeling or showing a lot of excitement or interest about sth/sb enthusiasm n
talkative	A talkative person likes to talk a lot.
decisive	able to make decisions quickly and with confidence
assert yourself	behave in a confident way and say clearly what you think or want assertive adj
attitude (to/towards/about/on sth/sb)	the way you think or feel about sth/sb
truly	used to emphasize sth; very
passionate (about sth)	very enthusiastic or interested passion (for sth) n
lively	full of life and energy
dynamic	having a lot of energy and a strong personality

1 Is the pronunciation of the underlined letters the same or different? Write S or D.

Use the **APP** to help you.

- | | | | | | |
|--------------|--------------|-------|--------------|-----------|-------|
| 1 dynamic | truly | ..... | 5 talkative | introvert | ..... |
| 2 passionate | assert | ..... | 6 assertive | extrovert | ..... |
| 3 passion | enthusiastic | ..... | 7 enthusiasm | decisive | ..... |
| 4 lively | dynamic | ..... | 8 assertive | attitude | ..... |

2 Correct the mistake in each sentence.

- My sister is absolutely passionate for skiing.
- She can't make up her mind about the holiday. She's not very deciding about things.
- Maurice really needs to assert him in meetings. I never know what he thinks.
- The professor talked with great enthusiastic about the new developments in chemistry.
- Helene has a live personality and everyone likes her.
- Her colleagues appreciate Anna's pleasant and dynamism manner.
- My cousin has a passion of Scottish castles. He spends all his time visiting them.
- I'm true passionate about the problem of global warming.

3 Complete the dialogues.

- Su and Dan love climbing and they go all the time. ~ I know – they're about it.
- Robina just concentrates on her own thoughts. ~ Yes, she's an
- She's full of ideas and has lots of energy. ~ Yes, she's very
- Oren is very confident and gets people to listen to what he thinks. ~ Yes, he's
- Ryan is very interested and excited about the new school plans. ~ Yes, he's very
- Ruby loves to chat – she never stops. ~ Yes, she's very
- Carly makes choices quickly and with confidence. ~ Yes she's very
- The children are running about and having fun. ~ Yes, they're very today.
- Adam's confident, open and enjoys being with people. ~ Yes, he's an

4 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or talk to another student.

- Who among your friends and family is ...
- an extrovert? an introvert? very talkative? dynamic?
- truly passionate about something? (What?) assertive? enthusiastic about cars?
- ▶ My sister is an extrovert. She loves talking to people and is very confident.

TEST YOURSELF

B Ideal match

Galina describes her ideal match:

I'm attracted to men who are **considerate** and **sensible**, and they should be happy to show **affection** too. I'm not looking for a **saint** – just a normal guy who is **sincere** and is looking for a **genuine** relationship. I don't like people who **show off** or **boast** about things. I'm interested in someone with **integrity** who is **decent** and has **ethical** values. And if they like the outdoor life, so much the better!

SPOTLIGHT *saint and holy*

- 1 A **saint** (abbreviations **S, St**) is a person that the Christian Church recognizes as being very **holy** (= good in a religious or moral way) because of the way they have lived or died.
- 2 In the text, a **saint** (*inf*) is a very good, kind person.

GLOSSARY

considerate	thinking about other people's wishes and feelings SYN thoughtful OPP inconsiderate; consideration n
sensible	make good judgements based on reason and experience rather than emotion
affection	the feeling of liking or caring about sth/sb affectionate adj SYN loving
sincere	(of feelings or beliefs) showing what you really think SYN genuine OPP insincere
show off <i>inf, disapproving</i>	behave in a way that is intended to attract people's attention and make them admire you. A person who does this is a show-off .
boast	talk with too much pride about sth you have or can do
integrity	the quality of being honest and having strong moral principles
decent	honest, good and fair
ethical	connected with beliefs and principles about what is good and right ethic n: They're looking for people with a strong work ethic.

5 Positive or negative? Write P or N.

- | | |
|--|--------------------------------------|
| 1 That woman is a real saint. | 6 I find him quite insincere. |
| 2 The decision is completely ethical. | 7 She shows a lot of affection. |
| 3 He's a decent guy. | 8 He's always boasting. |
| 4 She shows off a lot. | 9 I think she's inconsiderate. |
| 5 He's very genuine. | 10 He has integrity. |

6 Circle the correct word.

- 1 Angela arrived in an expensive outfit, covered in jewellery. I think she was *showing off / boasting*.
- 2 Mario adores his wife and is very *holy / affectionate* towards her.
- 3 I think you can trust Jamelia's judgement; she's very *affectionate / sensible*.
- 4 Do you think Mr Erickson is *ethical / sincere* about wanting to help us?
- 5 *Decent / Thoughtful* people don't go stealing from shopping malls.
- 6 We need people in this company who have a strong work *integrity / ethic*.
- 7 You have to be a *show-off / saint* to live with Duncan: he's a very difficult person.

7 Complete the sentences.

- 1 It's to give your seat to an elderly person on a bus or train.
- 2 Where I live, you should never show any to your husband or wife in the street.
- 3 A lot of people who off are unsure of themselves and are seeking attention.
- 4 Some people about their expensive holidays. It gets on my nerves.
- 5 people are kind and friendly towards strangers or foreigners.
- 6 People who keep you waiting for over fifteen minutes are really
- 7 In my country, shop assistants smile a lot and seem friendly, but I don't think that it's
- 8 In my country, most politicians have and can be trusted.

8 ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY Are the sentences in Exercise 7 true about your country? If not, what is the truth? Write your answers, or tell another student.

.....





.....

.....



TEST YOURSELF

Interviews were conducted on July 30th for the flight attendant training programme. We require a calm, confident and hard-working person.

NAME	Interviewer's comments	?
 Joel Robbins	Joel seemed rather arrogant and immature. He started badly by saying some idiotic things about the company, showing that he wasn't at all knowledgeable about it. He struggled to answer the most basic questions.	no
 Makiko Yaguchi	I didn't know what to make of her at first, but as the interview progressed, I felt she was a very capable person, mature and motivated.	yes?
 Marek Novak	At first he came across as timid and lacking in confidence. However, as he relaxed, I could see he was actually quite charming. He seemed conscientious and efficient, and I think he would take the job seriously.	yes?
 Jacinta Ribeiro	I really took to Jacinta immediately. She struck me as a confident, straightforward candidate, and I feel she has great potential.	yes

GLOSSARY

arrogant	behaving in a proud, unpleasant way arrogance <i>n</i>	confidence	a belief in yourself and your abilities confident <i>adj</i>
immature	behaving in a way that is typical of much younger people OPP mature	charming	very pleasant charm <i>n</i>
idiotic	very stupid SYN ridiculous; idiot <i>n</i>	conscientious	taking care to do things carefully and correctly
knowledgeable	knowing a lot SYN well informed	efficient	doing sth well without making mistakes or wasting time efficiency <i>n</i>
struggle (to do sth)	try very hard to do sth when it is difficult or there are a lot of problems struggle <i>n</i>	take sth/sb seriously	think that sth/sb is important and is worth your attention
capable	able to do things well	take to sb/sth	start liking sb/sth
motivated	wanting to do sth, especially sth involving hard work motivation <i>n</i>	straightforward	honest and open about your feelings and opinions
timid	shy and nervous	potential	qualities in a person that exist and can be developed potential <i>adj</i>
be lacking in sth	having none or not enough of sth ALSO lack sth		

SPOTLIGHT *creating and forming an impression*

make sth of sb understand the character of sb:

*I didn't know what to **make of him**. What do you **make of** the new receptionist?*

come across (as sth) make a particular impression **SYN** come over (as sth):

- He **came over/across** very well in the discussion.
 - He **comes over/across as** an efficient person.
- strike sb as sth** give somebody a particular impression:
- She **struck me as** someone with potential. He **struck me as** odd.

1 Complete the table.

NOUN	ADJECTIVE
	arrogant
	confident
	efficient
	charming
motivation	
potential	
knowledge	
idiot	

2 Is the pronunciation of the underlined letters the same or different? Write S or D. Use the APP to help you.

- | | | | |
|--|-------|--|-------|
| 1 mature <u>ch</u> arm | ..... | 5 ridicul <u>ou</u> s seri <u>ou</u> sly | ..... |
| 2 confid <u>en</u> ce id <u>ig</u> t | ..... | 6 cap <u>a</u> ble ar <u>ro</u> gant | ..... |
| 3 str <u>ai</u> gh <u>th</u> for <u>wa</u> rd well-in <u>fo</u> rmed | ..... | 7 ridicul <u>ou</u> s str <u>u</u> gg <u>l</u> e | ..... |
| 4 p <u>o</u> t <u>en</u> tial conf <u>id</u> ent | ..... | 8 cons <u>ci</u> ent <u>io</u> us eff <u>ic</u> ient | ..... |

3 Complete the dialogues in a suitable way.

- Is Mr Morris knowledgeable about the business? ~ Yes, he's very
- Does she say exactly what she wants? ~ Yes, she's very
- She seems like she's just out of school. ~ I agree. She's too for our company.
- Would he be organized and work quickly? ~ I think so. His old boss said he was
- Was it easy to fill in that long form? ~ No, it was a real I didn't understand it.
- That candidate's answers were idiotic! ~ Yes, they were He'd be hopeless.
- I liked him, but I'm worried that he's quite shy. ~ Yes, he's rather, isn't he?
- Would she have the right qualities for managing the office? ~Yes, she seemed to me.

4 Rewrite the sentences using the word or a form of the word in capitals. Keep the same meaning.

- What did you think of Aaron's character? MAKE
- Josie found it hard to explain what she meant. STRUGGLE
- Lawrence didn't seem that charming to me. LACKING
- I didn't like Rollo at first. TAKE
- Parminder made a very good impression in the interview. COMF.
- Rupert gave me the impression of being capable. STRIKE
- I think Ariana has qualities that can be developed. POTENTIAL
- Vicky didn't seem to have much motivation. MOTIVATED

5 ABOUT YOU Complete the answers in a way that is true for you. If possible, talk to another student.

- I am well informed about
- I think people who are conscientious
- If people are charming towards me, I
- I feel confident when
- It's sometimes a struggle for me to
- If I meet someone who is arrogant, I
- If someone doesn't take me seriously, I
- I don't take to people who
- In an interview situation, I think I probably come across as
- If someone says something ridiculous in an interview, I think it could be because



A Strong feelings

Word/Phrase	Example	Meaning
ecstatic	<i>I was ecstatic about getting the new job.</i>	very happy, excited and enthusiastic SYN delighted, over the moon <i>inf</i>
thrilled	<i>Lou was thrilled to win the competition.</i>	very excited and pleased
joy	<i>It's always a joy to see the children.</i>	sb/sth that gives you great pleasure joyful <i>adj</i>
astonished	<i>I was astonished when they gave me the prize.</i>	very surprised about sth you did not expect SYN astounded
shocked	<i>I was shocked to hear she was so ill.</i>	surprised and upset shock <i>n, v</i>
in tears	<i>She was in tears by the time we got to the hospital.</i>	crying; tear a drop of water coming from your eye
devastated	<i>I was devastated when she left me.</i>	very upset SYN heartbroken
desperate	<i>Alone, without food or money, Janie was desperate.</i>	having little hope and ready to do anything to change a terrible situation desperation <i>n</i>
ashamed	<i>He stole the money, but felt very ashamed of himself afterwards.</i>	guilty or embarrassed that you have done sth wrong shame <i>n</i>
disgusted	<i>We were disgusted by the way the children were treated. It was awful.</i>	very angry and upset about sth you do not like or agree with disgust <i>n</i>

1 Are these positive or negative? Write P, N or P/N.

- | | | | | | |
|-----------------|-------|---------------|-------|----------------|-------|
| 1 ecstatic | ..... | 5 shame | ..... | 9 astonished | ..... |
| 2 disgust | ..... | 6 delighted | ..... | 10 in tears | ..... |
| 3 shock | ..... | 7 desperation | ..... | 11 thrilled | ..... |
| 4 over the moon | ..... | 8 joy | ..... | 12 heartbroken | ..... |

2 Circle the correct word(s) in italics. Sometimes both answers are correct.

- I was *ashamed* / *astounded* when I heard that I'd come top in the exam.
- Our daughter passed her driving test and we were *over the moon* / *devastated*.
- My cat was killed in front of me by a driver; I was *heartbroken* / *joyful*.
- There were cats on the table in the hotel kitchen. I was *thrilled* / *disgusted*.
- Our team won the championship and we were all *desperate* / *ecstatic*.
- The news about the flood was terribly sad; my sister was *in tears* / *delighted*.
- My son was born on New Year's Day, and my family were *delighted* / *shocked*.
- My brother has been missing for a week now and my dad and I are *ashamed* / *desperate*.

3 Complete the dialogues using vocabulary from the table.

- I think she was very surprised at the news. ~ She was – absolutely
- Mac's lost 20 kg because of his illness. ~ Yes, I was when I saw him.
- Did he think he wouldn't be rescued? ~ Yes. He was
- Was he terribly upset about the results? ~ Yes, he was absolutely
- That boy cheated in his exams. ~ He should be very of himself.
- I bet they were over the moon. ~ Yes, they were absolutely
- She was really emotional about losing her job. ~ Yes, she was in
- The hotel bedroom was really dirty. ~ Yes, I was when I saw it.



TEST YOURSELF

B Expressing your emotions

ARE YOU the kind of person who **bottles up your emotions**? Do you find it difficult to **handle intense feelings**, or do you just **suppress** them? Do you feel that if you **reveal** too much about yourself, you could make yourself rather **vulnerable**. **Psychologists** say that suppressing your emotions over a long period of time is often ineffective and can **worsen** the situation. It can even lead to **severe anxiety** and **depression** at a later stage.

GLOSSARY

bottle sth up	stop yourself showing negative emotions or feelings especially over a long time: bottle up your emotions/feelings
handle	deal with sth/sb: handle stress / your emotions
intense	very strong, very great
suppress	stop yourself from having or expressing a feeling/emotion
reveal	make sth known to sb SYN disclose formal
vulnerable	weak and easily hurt, physically or emotionally
worsen	become or make sth worse than before
severe	extremely bad or serious
anxiety	the state of feeling nervous or worried that sth bad is going to happen anxious adj
depression	a medical condition in which sb feels very sad and anxious for a long time depressed adj

SPOTLIGHT *psychology and related words*

Psychology is the study of the mind and how it affects people's behaviour. A person who is trained in **psychology** is a **psychologist**. **Psychological** problems relate to the way somebody's mind works, e.g. some pain can be **psychological** rather than **physical**.

4 Underline the main stress on these words. Use the APP to help you.

reveal	vulnerable	anxiety	worsen
severe	disclose	psychological	intense
anxious	psychology	psychologist	suppress

5 Replace the underlined word(s) with a word that has the same meaning.

- I did a course in the study of the mind and behaviour at university.
- He wouldn't disclose information if he thought it was secret.
- It's a difficult time for him and he's weak and easily hurt.
- Things have got a lot worse since the elections.
- Donna has been suffering from a very serious depression.
- I don't think Steven is dealing with the stress of school very well.
- She has very strong feelings about Alastair; it's a love/hate relationship.
- Last year I suffered from a period of worry and nervousness.

6 Complete the questions.

- Do top sports people tend to stress well or badly?
- Is it good for powerful people to show they are and have weaknesses?
- Can you think of any problems that are currently studying?
- Are there times when it's good to your emotions and stay silent?
- How can people deal with feelings of loneliness?
- Are there any professions where you think people suffer a lot from ?
- What's the best thing to do if you're feeling very about something?
- If you your emotions, do you think it affects your physical health?
- Do you your anxieties or deeper emotions to a friend or a family member?
- Have you ever studied at school or university? Would you like to?

7 ABOUT YOU Write your answers to Exercise 6, or ask another student.



TEST YOURSELF

19 Relationships

A Difficult relationships

When I married Vince, he already had two children from his first marriage, and they **took an instant dislike to me**. They **blamed me** for all their problems. I tried hard to get their **respect**, but they wouldn't **forgive me** for taking the place of their mother. They either **stared at me** without saying a thing, or were openly **aggressive**. It was a **tough time**, and it was **inevitable** that it finally **put a strain on** my relationship with Vince. I began to **regret** my decision to marry him. Fortunately, he **stuck up for me** when the kids were difficult, and over time, things **settled down** a bit.



SPOTLIGHT meanings of tough

Tough can mean:

- 1 difficult: *He had a **tough** childhood.* (as in the text)
- 2 strong and able to deal with difficult situations: *She'll be OK – she's **tough**.*
- 3 strict: *There are some **tough** new driving laws.*

GLOSSARY

take an instant/immediate dislike to sb	dislike sb as soon as you meet them	aggressive	angry and ready to attack sb
blame sb (for sth)	think or say that sb is responsible for sth bad	inevitable	that you cannot avoid or prevent
respect	polite behaviour towards sb/sth that you think is important	put a strain on sb/sth	create pressure and anxiety for sb/sth
forgive sb (for sth/for doing sth)	stop feeling angry towards sb for sth that they have done wrong	regret (sth / doing sth)	feel sorry about sth you have done
stare (at sb/sth)	look at sb/sth for a long time	stick up for sb/yourself	support and defend sb/yourself when they/you are criticized
		settle down	become calmer, more relaxed and less excited

1 Positive or negative? Write P or N.

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1 The protests are putting a strain on the country. | 6 Things are tough at work now. |
| 2 I think he's forgiven me. | 7 Being poor has made him tough. |
| 3 He's very aggressive. | 8 I really regret contacting him. |
| 4 She can stick up for herself. | 9 Things have settled down since the strike. |
| 5 She blames me for what happened. | 10 The war was inevitable. |

2 Complete the sentences.

- 1 I don't leaving the job: it was the right decision.
- 2 As soon as I met him, I took an immediate to him.
- 3 The food was my responsibility, so I don't anyone else for the mistake in the order.
- 4 The lack of money put a terrible on our relationship.
- 5 Some children do what they like and have no for authority.
- 6 Please don't at those people; it's rude.
- 7 My brother accepted that he caused the accident, but I him; he's my brother.
- 8 Mum accused me of lying, but my sister up for me and said I was telling the truth.

3 One word is missing in each line. Where does it go? Write it at the end of the line.

I've been having a time at work recently. A young man joined the department and for some reason an instant dislike to me. His desk was close to mine, and he just sat and at me without speaking, which made me feel uncomfortable. Over time, he started to shout at me and became more and more until I felt quite nervous being near him. It put a big on me and my work began to suffer. One day, I decided it was time to stick for myself, so I told him his behaviour was terrible. I was shocked when he suddenly started crying and, of course, I what I nad said to him. He thought that I him for the poor results in the department, when in fact, that wasn't the case. Eventually, things down, and we got on much better.

- 1
- 2
- 3
- 4
- 5
- 6
- 7
- 8
- 9

TEST YOURSELF

B Successful relationships



Now two years on, things are **looking up**. **Initially** the kids were really **nasty** to me and **reluctant** to **accept** me, but I gave up work to spend more time with them, and that helped to create a closer **bond**. I realized that I had been too **strict** with them and not **caring** enough; I just wasn't **sensitive** to their needs. To be honest, it was my own **fault** – I'm the adult and should have known better. It takes a lot of **patience**, but I'm feeling optimistic and I really enjoy being with them now.

GLOSSARY

look up <i>inf</i>	(of sb's situation or business) start to become better after a difficult period
initially	in the beginning initial <i>adj</i>
nasty	unkind; unpleasant SYN mean
reluctant (to do sth)	not wanting to do sth SYN unwilling; reluctance <i>n</i>
bond	a connection between people based on shared feelings or experiences
strict	If you are strict , you make people do what you want and do not allow them to behave badly.
caring	kind and showing that you care about people
sensitive (to sth)	understanding other people's feelings and being careful about them
fault	If sth bad is your fault , you made it happen.
patience	the ability to stay calm and not get angry when waiting for sth patient <i>adj</i>

SPOTLIGHT **accept**

Accept means 'say yes to an offer', but has some other meanings, too.

- 1 allow sb to be part of a group:
*They **accepted me** as one of the family. (as in the text)*
- 2 agree to sth:
*The council has **accepted** the latest proposal.*
- 3 admit you did sth wrong:
*I **accept responsibility** for the mistakes.*

4 Is the pronunciation of the underlined letters the same or different? Write S or D. Use the APP to help you.

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1 <u>initially</u> <u>reluctant</u> | 4 <u>fault</u> <u>bond</u> |
| 2 <u>patience</u> <u>initial</u> | 5 <u>look</u> <u>caring</u> |
| 3 <u>strict</u> <u>accept</u> | 6 <u>sensitive</u> <u>reluctance</u> |

5 Circle the correct word.

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1 She showed a <u>reluctance</u> / <u>unwilling</u> to speak about the event. | 4 She's a <u>caring</u> / <u>patience</u> nurse. |
| 2 The <u>initial</u> / <u>initially</u> problem was money. | 5 The mistake wasn't my <u>bond</u> / <u>fault</u> . |
| 3 He's <u>sensible</u> / <u>sensitive</u> to the feelings of others. | 6 It can be a good thing if parents are <u>nasty</u> / <u>strict</u> . |
| | 7 My business is finally <u>accepting</u> / <u>looking up</u> . |

6 Replace the underlined word(s) with a word or phrase that keeps the same meaning.

- 1 It's not my responsibility if we're late.
- 2 They were very unwilling to leave.
- 3 She expects people to obey her all the time.
- 4 In the beginning it was a difficult relationship.
- 5 He admits responsibility for what happened.
- 6 I have no ability to wait for things for a long time.
- 7 It was strange moving to a different country, but I now feel welcome.
- 8 I had a tough time last year but things are improving now.
- 9 The children said some very unpleasant things about me.
- 10 There is a special connection between parents and their children.



TEST YOURSELF

A Personal heroes

My **heroine** is my aunt Georgia, who worked with homeless teenagers. She was deeply **spiritual**, and I admire her **courage** and **dignity**. More than anyone, she has **inspired** me to **dedicate** my life to looking after people.

I really **looked up to** my grandfather. He was a lifeboat **captain** for 20 years, and showed remarkable **bravery** on many occasions – at times he was truly **heroic**.

GLOSSARY	
heroine	a woman who you admire for doing sth brave or good. A man is a hero . heroic <i>adj</i> showing extreme courage heroism <i>n</i>
spiritual	connected with your spirit, rather than the physical world
courage	the ability to do sth, even though it is dangerous, frightening or very difficult SYN bravery; courageous, brave <i>adj</i>
dignity	the ability to behave in a calm and serious manner in a difficult situation dignified <i>adj</i>
inspire	give sb the enthusiasm and desire to do sth inspiration <i>n</i> ; inspirational <i>adj</i>
dedicate yourself/sth to (doing) sth	give a lot of time and effort to a particular activity or purpose because you think it is important
look up to sb	admire and respect sb, often sb older or in a higher position
captain	the person in charge of a ship or plane

1 Is the pronunciation of the underlined letters the same or different? Write **S** or **D**. Use the **APP** to help you.

- | | | | |
|--|-------|---------------------------------------|-------|
| 1 hero <u>h</u> eroism | ..... | 5 capt <u>a</u> in sp <u>i</u> ritual | ..... |
| 2 cour <u>a</u> ge cour <u>a</u> geous | ..... | 6 dign <u>i</u> ty cour <u>a</u> ge | ..... |
| 3 insp <u>i</u> re insp <u>i</u> ration | ..... | 7 dign <u>i</u> fied brav <u>e</u> ry | ..... |
| 4 insp <u>i</u> ration dedic <u>a</u> te | ..... | 8 her <u>o</u> ine her <u>o</u> ic | ..... |

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word in capitals.

- | | | | |
|-----------------------------------|-------------|------------------------------|-----------|
| 1 He was so | COURAGE | 5 I admired her | DIGNIFIED |
| 2 She's a personal of mine. | HERO | 6 His behaviour was | HERO |
| 3 She showed great | BRAVE | 7 She was an leader. | INSPIRE |
| 4 He me in my work. | INSPIRATION | 8 He is a very person. | SPIRIT |

3 Complete the texts.

- The person who has always been my is my mother. She looked after us all throughout the war. I was born during the war, and when the government tried to take us children away to another part of the country, she was very and fought to keep us with her.
 - I always up to my uncle. He was a in the navy and he me to join the navy myself when I grew up. On several occasions he rescued migrants who were lost at sea. To me he was a
 - Rosa Parks is a personal of mine. She refused to give up her seat on the bus in Alabama, a protest which eventually led to the end of 'white only' buses. She acted with great
- She said of herself, 'I was a person with and self-respect, and I should not set my sights* lower than anybody else just because I was black'.
- * = decide that you want sth and try very hard to get it

4 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.

Do you have a personal hero or heroine? Who?
 Who do you look up to? Why?
 Do you know anyone who you would describe as courageous? Who?

.....

TEST YOURSELF

B Personal villains

Pop stars often start off as **rebels** with strong moral **principles**. But when they achieve **fame** and become rich, their **values** can change completely. I **loathe** that.

A few boys **bullied** me at school, and since then I've always **despised** bullies.

I **can't bear** all the rich, **greedy** people who seem to run the country. They are responsible for such **misery**.

I don't **approve of** drivers who lose their **temper** with other road users.

SPOTLIGHT *principles and values*

Principles are strong beliefs that influence how you behave. **Values** (pl) are beliefs about what is right, wrong and important in life. The words are very similar in meaning but are used in different expressions.

- *Eating meat is **against my principles**.*
- *I won't go there **on principle**.*
- *She has a different **set of values**.*

GLOSSARY

villain	a person who is morally bad or responsible for causing trouble or harm	bully	use your power to hurt or frighten a weaker person, or make them do sth. The person who does the bullying is a bully .
rebel	sb who opposes people in authority rebel v; rebellious adj	despise	hate and have no respect for sb/sth despicable adj (usually in negatives and questions) If you can't bear sth, you cannot accept or deal with sth because it is unpleasant. SYN can't stand
fame	the state of being famous	can't bear	wanting more food, power, etc. than you need greed n
loathe	dislike sb/sth very much SYN detest	greedy	great suffering of the mind or body SYN distress
approve (of sb/sth)	have a positive feeling towards sth/sb OPP disapprove (of sb/sth); approval n OPP disapproval	misery	
lose your temper	become very angry		

5 Circle the words which are verbs.

rebel approval detest fame principles despise lose your temper disapprove loathe greed bully

6 Complete the sentences.

- The opposite of **approval** is
- Detest** means the same as
- The related adjective for **despise** is
- The related adjective for **rebel** is
- Distress** is another word for
- The related adjective for **greed** is
- Can't stand** means the same as
- Approve** is followed by the preposition
- The noun related to **famous** is
- Values** and have a similar meaning.

7 Complete the questions with words from the box in the correct form.

against	disapprove	rebellious	temper	villain	bear
greedy	rebel	values	bully	principle	despise

- Do brothers sometimes their sisters, or can the opposite be true?
- Is there anything you won't eat on
- Do you often lose your
- Are there any types of car drivers that you can't
- As a teenager, were you a? If so, what were you about?
- Is it your principles to borrow money from friends?
- Do you of any of your friends' partners? Why?
- In your country, do young people and older people have different sets of
- Do you think rich people are and just want more and more?
- Is there anyone you and would consider a

8 ABOUT YOU Write your answers to the questions in Exercise 7, or ask another student.

.....

.....

TEST YOURSELF

A Influences on behaviour

Why do we behave the way we do? Is it a case of **nature** or **nurture**? According to behavioural psychologist Michael Woods, various factors have an **impact on** our lives.

Parents **play a crucial part**; other **role models** are less influential.

Peer pressure is a significant factor.

People respond positively to **incentives**, but not the threat of punishments.

A **broken home** or **deprived** childhood needn't have a **damaging effect**.

ABOUT YOU

.....

.....

.....

.....

GLOSSARY

nature	the basic character of a person: <i>Violence isn't in his nature.</i>	peer pressure	the influence on your behaviour of people around you of the same age
nurture	the care and attention given to help sb develop nurture v	incentive (to do sth)	sth that encourages you to do sth, work harder, etc.
impact (on sth)	an effect or influence (on sth)	broken home	a family in which the parents are divorced or separated
play a part (in sth)	be involved and influential in developing sth	deprived	without sufficient food, education or money deprive v; deprivation n
crucial	extremely important because it will affect other things	damaging	having a bad effect on sb/sth: <i>a damaging effect</i> OPP beneficial
role model	a person you admire and learn from		
influential	able to influence the way other people think or behave		

1 Find six compounds or phrases in the box.

effect nature or pressure a part a deprived a beneficial
a broken peer play childhood home nurture?

.....

.....

.....

2 Are these positive or negative statements? Write P or N.

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1 She felt nurtured in the children's home. | 5 More money proved to be a real incentive. |
| 2 She's an influential role model. | 6 A month's break was highly beneficial. |
| 3 There is a lot of deprivation in this town. | 7 He smoked because of peer pressure. |
| 4 The amount of work had a damaging effect on me. | 8 Their broken home had an impact on the boys. |

3 Complete the text.

Danny's story is interesting. He came from a broken (1), had a fairly (2) childhood, and was stealing by the age of 13, largely because of peer (3), He also got into fights, although it wasn't in his (4) to be violent. Then he started going to a local boxing club, which had a real (5) on his life. The man who ran it was Danny's first positive role (6), and he played a (7) part in changing Danny's attitude to life. His behaviour changed completely: he gave up crime and became dedicated to his sport. He might even win a place in England's amateur boxing team at the next Olympics, and that is a real (8) for him to train hard.

4 ABOUT YOU Do you agree with the statements at the top of the page? Write your answers, or ask another student.



TEST YOURSELF

B Teenage behaviour

COPING WITH ADOLESCENCE

When **adolescents** are making the **transition** to **adulthood**, their **conduct** can change a lot and can be difficult for parents. Teenagers need you to be **supportive** and **sympathetic** as they try to find their way towards independence. Encourage them to talk about their problems, but only **in their own time** and at their own **pace**. If you are **wise**, you will try to be **consistent** in the way you deal with them, and help them **cope with** the changes in their needs and emotions. And remember that it's just a **phase** they're going through.

SPOTLIGHT *stages of life*

Adolescence is the time in someone's life when they develop from a child to an adult. An **adolescent** between the ages of 13 and 19 is called a **teenager**. **adolescent**, **teenage** *adj*

Adulthood is the time in your life when you are no longer a child or teenager and become an **adult**. **SYN** **grown-up**; **adult**, **grown-up** *adj*

GLOSSARY

cope (with sth)	deal successfully with sth difficult
transition (from sth to sth)	a change from one state or form to another
conduct	a person's behaviour in a particular place or situation
supportive	giving help or support to sb in a difficult situation
sympathetic (to/towards sb)	showing that you understand other people's feelings, especially their problems sympathy <i>n</i>
in your own time	when you are ready
pace	the speed at which sth happens: at your own pace (= as fast or as slowly as you like)
wise	able to make sensible decisions or give good advice because of your experience or knowledge wisdom <i>n</i> ; gain wisdom become wiser
consistent	always having the same opinions, standards, etc. and not changing them
phase	a stage in the development of sth: go through a phase

5 Circle the correct word.

- When you work with teenagers, you need to be *sympathetic* / *grown-up*.
- My son has just become a *teenage* / *teenager*.
- I think it's just a difficult phase she's going *through* / *to*.
- What are the main problems for teenagers during *adolescents* / *adolescence*?
- Just make your choices at your own *pace* / *time*.
- Ariel's attitude changes all the time: she's not very *wise* / *consistent*.
- Ollie's successfully made the transition from adolescence to *adult* / *adulthood*.
- Cora is 17 now, so she isn't a *teenager* / *grown-up* yet.

6 Complete the sentences using suitable words from the top of the page.

- It's always to think carefully before you speak.
- The best way to with difficult situations is to laugh about them.
- The most difficult of your life is in your twenties.
- If you have problems, it helps to have a friend or partner.
- The from childhood to adolescence is an easy one.
- You need to be when creating rules for your children to live by.
- You can only gain through years of life experience.
- In order to get through your teenage years, you have to make decisions in your own and at your own
- When your mother starts asking you for advice, you know you're an
- I have great for families who are struggling with problem teenagers.
- People accept bad from teenagers but not so easily from adults.

7 ABOUT YOU Do you agree with the sentences in Exercise 6? Why? / Why not? Write your answers, or talk to another student.

.....

.....

.....



There is a **tendency** among some women to believe that **however hard** you try, you end up like your mother. Well, **it's hard to say** if that's **the case** with me because my mother **passed away** when I was only nine, and my father was left a **widower**. He did remarry several years later, and I was **brought up** by my father and **stepmother**. I know the **presence** of a new woman in the family can be difficult, but we have always had a really positive relationship. We are **not alike** in looks or character, but I think I've **picked up** one or two of her good habits. For example, I always remember to write **personally** to thank people for birthday or Christmas presents.

By my **teens**, my father told me that I was starting to **resemble** my mother a bit more, and it seems I have got one or two of her **characteristics**. (Like me, she didn't **take criticism** very well!) But I think it's now increasingly **apparent** that I **take after** my father more in character and behaviour. That's fine by me, although it seems to be the opposite with my two **siblings**, both sisters. My dad says that they **remind** him much more **of** my mother.

me with my mother
when I was nine



me now at the age of 21

GLOSSARY

tendency	If sb has a particular tendency , they are likely to behave or act in a particular way.	alike	very similar
however	used with an adjective or adverb to mean 'to whatever degree': however hard , however much	pick sth up	get a skill, habit, etc. by chance, without making an effort to get it
it's hard to say	= it's difficult to give an opinion	personally	by a particular person and not someone else
the case	the true situation	teens	the period between 13 and 19: <i>They're in their teens.</i>
pass away	die. We sometimes use pass away to avoid saying <i>die</i> . SYN pass on	characteristic	a typical feature or quality that sb has characteristic (of sb/sth) adj
widower	a man whose wife/husband has died. A widow is a woman whose husband/wife has died. We can use late in formal English to talk about sb's dead wife/husband: <i>the property of his late wife</i>	criticism	the act of expressing unhappiness and disapproval with sb/sth: <i>He can't take any criticism; criticize v</i>
bring sb up (often passive)	care for a child, teaching them how to behave, etc. SYN raise	apparent	easy to see or understand SYN obvious
stepmother	the woman who is married to your father but is not your real mother ALSO stepfather/daughter/son , etc.	sibling formal	a brother or a sister
presence	(of a person) the fact of being in a particular place	remind sb of sb/sth	If sb/sth reminds you of sb/sth else, they make you remember or think about the other person, place, thing, etc. because they are similar in some way.

SPOTLIGHT *expressing family similarities*

If you **resemble someone/something**, you look like or are similar to another person/thing. The emphasis is more on looks than character. **resemblance n**

If you **take after someone**, you look or behave like an older member of your family.

If you **follow in someone's footsteps**, you do the same job or have the same lifestyle as someone else, usually a member of your family.

1 How many syllables are there in each of these words?

tendency _____ widower _____ personally _____ resemblance _____
alike _____ characteristic _____ criticism _____ apparent _____

2 Is the pronunciation of the underlined letters the same or different? Write S or D.

Use the **APP** to help you.

1 remind sibling _____ 3 presence remind _____ 5 apparent alike _____
2 sibling widower _____ 4 tendency obvous _____ 6 criticize alike _____

3 Replace the underlined words with a word or phrase that keeps the same meaning.

- 1 She is between 13 and 19. _____
- 2 They aren't very similar. _____
- 3 She looks like her mother. _____
- 4 He has three brothers and sisters. _____
- 5 It's difficult to give an opinion whether it will work. _____
- 6 I'm not sure if that's the true situation with him. _____
- 7 Her mother died last year. _____
- 8 Constant optimism is just one of his typical features. _____

4 Complete the sentences

- 1 Her husband died in the war so she's been a _____ for many years.
- 2 If I speak to him _____, then I'm sure he'll understand.
- 3 There's a strong _____ between the two sisters. People often say they are _____.
- 4 _____ hard I work, I still can't seem to understand this subject.
- 5 If you see them together, it's _____ that they are twins.
- 6 Lea was upset because her mum _____ her for wearing too much make-up.
- 7 I'm like Mum, but Martha _____ after Dad much more in the way she behaves.
- 8 My mum wants to be there. She thinks the _____ of a parent will make a difference.
- 9 My brother _____ up playing guitar just from watching and listening to other guitarists.
- 10 I have a _____ to talk too much when I'm nervous.

5 Complete the dialogues with a word or phrase.

- 1 Does Lucy _____ you _____ anyone? ~ Yes. She's just like Rachel, isn't she?
- 2 I had to tell Ben his work wasn't good enough. ~ I know, and he doesn't take _____ very well, does he?
- 3 Will Joasia be a doctor like her dad? ~ Yes, I believe she's following _____.
- 4 Have you always lived in London? ~ No, I was _____ in the country, and moved here when I was 18.
- 5 Do you think your family will like your new girlfriend? ~ I don't know. It's _____.
- 6 Is Don your real father? ~ No, he's my _____.
- 7 Have you _____ read the document? ~ Not yet, but I've heard what it contains.
- 8 Did his father run the company? ~ No, his _____ mother did until her death.

6 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or talk to another student.

- 1 Do you resemble either your mother or father?
- 2 Do you think you take after one of your parents more than the other?
- 3 If you have siblings, do you think you are alike in either looks and/or character?
- 4 Do you think there are any characteristics that are common to different members of your family?
- 5 Do you agree that daughters usually end up like their mothers? Do you think it might also be true that sons end up like their fathers?
- 6 Do you think you take criticism well?



B Expressing your emotions

ARE YOU the kind of person who **bottles up your emotions**? Do you find it difficult to **handle intense feelings**, or do you just **suppress** them? Do you feel that if you **reveal** too much about yourself, you could make yourself rather **vulnerable**. **Psychologists** say that suppressing your emotions over a long period of time is often ineffective and can **worsen** the situation. It can even lead to **severe anxiety** and **depression** at a later stage.

GLOSSARY

bottle sth up	stop yourself showing negative emotions or feelings especially over a long time: bottle up your emotions/feelings
handle	deal with sth/sb: handle stress / your emotions
intense	very strong, very great
suppress	stop yourself from having or expressing a feeling/emotion
reveal	make sth known to sb SYN disclose <i>formal</i>
vulnerable	weak and easily hurt, physically or emotionally
worsen	become or make sth worse than before
severe	extremely bad or serious
anxiety	the state of feeling nervous or worried that sth bad is going to happen anxious <i>adj</i>
depression	a medical condition in which sb feels very sad and anxious for a long time depressed <i>adj</i>

SPOTLIGHT *psychology and related words*

Psychology is the study of the mind and how it affects people's behaviour. A person who is trained in psychology is a **psychologist**. **Psychological** problems relate to the way somebody's mind works, e.g. some pain can be psychological rather than physical.

4 Underline the main stress on these words. Use the APP to help you.

- | | | | |
|---------|------------|---------------|----------|
| reveal | vulnerable | anxiety | worsen |
| severe | disclose | psychological | intense |
| anxious | psychology | psychologist | suppress |

5 Replace the underlined word(s) with a word that has the same meaning.

- I did a course in the study of the mind and behaviour at university.
- He wouldn't disclose information if he thought it was secret.
- It's a difficult time for him and he's weak and easily hurt.
- Things have got a lot worse since the elections.
- Donna has been suffering from a very serious depression.
- I don't think Steven is dealing with the stress of school very well.
- She has very strong feelings about Alastair; it's a love/hate relationship.
- Last year I suffered from a period of worry and nervousness.

6 Complete the questions.

- Do top sports people tend to stress well or badly?
- Is it good for powerful people to show they are and have weaknesses?
- Can you think of any problems that are currently studying?
- Are there times when it's good to your emotions and stay silent?
- How can people deal with feelings of loneliness?
- Are there any professions where you think people suffer a lot from ?
- What's the best thing to do if you're feeling very about something?
- If you your emotions, do you think it affects your physical health?
- Do you your anxieties or deeper emotions to a friend or a family member?
- Have you ever studied at school or university? Would you like to?

7 ABOUT YOU Write your answers to Exercise 6, or ask another student.

.....

.....

.....



TEST YOURSELF

B Polite or impolite?

- Dan** Ella's behaviour is **exceptional** for a child of six.
- Beth** Yes, but that brother of hers is a bit **cheeky**.
-
- Jo** I don't think Giulio will **take offence** if you leave the party early.
- Tom** I just don't want to **put my foot in it**. I want to **impress** his family, and that wouldn't help.
- Jo** Well, you'd better **be on your best behaviour**, then!
-
- Kaz** I really **took exception to** Adam's remarks. He thought they were **humorous**, but actually, they were **deeply** offensive.
- Ben** Yes, I couldn't agree more. They showed a real lack of **judgement**. He has no **notion** of how to behave.

GLOSSARY

exceptional	unusually good SYN outstanding
cheeky inf	(often used by adults about children) rude, often in an amusing way cheek n
take offence (at sth)	be upset or offended by sth that sb has said or done
put your foot in it (with sb) inf	accidentally say sth that offends or upsets sb
impress	If sth/sb impresses you, you admire it/them. impressed adj
be on your best behaviour	behave in the most polite way you can
take exception (to sth)	object strongly to sth and be angry about it
remark	a few words that give your opinion about sth SYN comment
humorous	funny and entertaining; showing a sense of humour
deeply	very; very much: deeply offensive/upsetting/hurtful
judgement	the ability to form opinions or make sensible decisions: show good/poor judgement
notion (of sth)	an idea or an understanding of sth

5 Is the speaker happy or unhappy? Write H or U.

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1 My wife has outstanding judgement. | 5 I made a really humorous comment. |
| 2 I put my foot in it with Carla. | 6 I took exception to the criticism. |
| 3 She took offence at my remark. | 7 The hosts impressed me. |
| 4 My boss has no sense of humour. | 8 My little girl was on her best behaviour. |

6 Circle the words in italics which are possible. All three may be.

- He was *outstanding* / *put his foot in it* / *on his best behaviour*.
- She made *a humorous* / *an upsetting* / *a cheeky* remark.
- What she said showed *poor* / *impressed* / *good* judgement.
- Unfortunately, she took *exception to* / *offence at* / *her foot in* what I said.
- That little boy's behaviour is *exceptional* / *cheek* / *outstanding*.
- I thought the comment deeply *offensive* / *poor* / *upsetting*.
- He has *a sense of humour* / *no notion of politeness* / *poor judgement*.
- He's not always well behaved but today he *impressed me* / *had no sense of humour* / *was exceptional*.

7 Complete the texts.

I have a very unusual friend called Erwin who likes to try and (1) people – he loves being admired. He's incredibly polite and has (2) table manners. I always feel rather uncomfortable with him, because I feel I have to be on my best (3) all the time. I'm very nervous about putting my (4) in it, especially if I go to his place for dinner. If I get there even five minutes late, he seems to take (5)

I've taken a strong dislike to one of the guys who works for me. He's very rude; in fact, I'd say he's (6) offensive. The other day he made a rude (7) about my appearance, which frankly is none of his business, and I really took (8) to it. Calling me 'carrot top' because of my red hair showed very poor (9), I felt. He thought it was a (10) comment, but I didn't find it funny at all.



TEST YOURSELF

A Fruit, vegetables, etc.



1 avocado



2 mango



3 watermelon



4 grapefruit



5 apricots



6 raspberries



7 raisins (a type of dried fruit)



8 aubergines



9 celery



10 asparagus



11 courgettes



12 beetroot



13 spinach



14 broccoli



15 almonds (a type of nut)



16 basil (a type of herb)



17 lentils (a type of pulse)



18 ginger (a type of spice)

1 Is the pronunciation of the underlined letters the same or different? Write **S** or **D**. Use the **APP** to help you.

- | | | | |
|------------------------|-------|------------------------|-------|
| 1 avocado apricot | ..... | 5 watermelon courgette | ..... |
| 2 grapefruit raspberry | ..... | 6 aubergine ginger | ..... |
| 3 aubergine avocado | ..... | 7 spinach ginger | ..... |
| 4 asparagus almond | ..... | 8 aubergine celery | ..... |

2 Complete the foods.

- | | |
|------------|-------------|
| 1 ma..... | 7 wat..... |
| 2 au..... | 8 cou..... |
| 3 bee..... | 9 gra..... |
| 4 av..... | 10 sp..... |
| 5 ra..... | 11 apr..... |
| 6 asp..... | 12 bro..... |

3 Complete the sentences in a logical way.

- | | |
|-------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 1 Celery is a type of | 4 Raisins are a type of fruit. |
| 2 Basil is a type of | 5 Ginger is a type of |
| 3 Almonds are a type of | 6 Lentils are a |

4 Answer the questions.













- Which of the fruits at the top of the page have a stone in the middle?
- Which of the vegetables at the top of the page can you eat cooked or raw?
- Why do you normally add basil or ginger to food?
- Are nuts and lentils healthy or unhealthy?

5 **ABOUT YOU AND YOUR COUNTRY** Write your answers, or talk to another student.

- Tick (✓) the foods that you often grow in your country.
- Put a cross (X) by the ones you think you have never eaten.
- Can you add to the list six more types of fruit, six vegetables, another nut, another herb, another dried fruit and another spice?

TEST YOURSELF

B Kitchen equipment

Equipment	used to ...	what?	Equipment	used to ...	what?
 deep-fat fryer	deep-fry	fish, potatoes, etc.	 grater	grate	cheese, e.g. parmesan
 casserole	braise/stew (cook meat slowly in liquid in a closed container)	meat, vegetables	 peeler	peel	vegetables, fruit
 food processor	chop, slice, mix	meat, vegetables, etc.	 lemon-squeezer	squeeze	lemons, oranges, limes
 whisk	beat SYN whisk	eggs, cream	 corkscrew	open	wine bottles
 colander	drain	vegetables, pasta, etc. that have been washed or cooked in water	 kitchen scales	weigh	all types of food
			 carving knife	carve	usually meat
			 frying pan	fry	meat, fish, vegetables

6 Find six compound words in the box.

frying processor	lemon-fryer	kitchen pan	food knife	carving squeezer	deep-fat scales
------------------	-------------	-------------	------------	------------------	-----------------

.....

7 Write down the equipment you would need to ...

- | | |
|--|--------------------------------|
| 1 drain vegetables cooked in water | 5 beat eggs |
| 2 braise/stew meat | 6 weigh food |
| 3 open a bottle of wine | 7 cut meat into slices |
| 4 chop and slice vegetables | 8 fry meat or vegetables |

8 Write down a food or type of food you often ...

- | | |
|------------------|----------------|
| 1 squeeze | 5 slice |
| 2 grate | 6 braise |
| 3 deep-fry | 7 carve |
| 4 weigh | 8 peel |

9 ABOUT YOU How much of the kitchen equipment above do you think you have in your kitchen? Are there any items of equipment you don't have that would be very useful?

.....



A Taste

☆☆☆☆☆ ☆☆☆☆☆ ★☆☆☆☆ ★★☆☆☆ ★★★★★ ★★★★★

☆☆☆☆☆

I thought the food looked quite **appetizing**, but I soon changed my mind. First of all, the bread was **stale**. I then started with very **salty** ham with melon, which wasn't **ripe**. My main course was a type of curry, which I thought would be really **spicy**, but was actually quite **bland**. My husband ordered a **rare** steak (hoping it would be **lean** and **juicy**), but instead got a piece of grey meat that was **well done** and **tough**. And the cooked vegetables were almost **raw**. The chocolate tart for dessert was far too **rich** – and very **fattening**. That was probably my mistake. Anyway, we finished with coffee that was very **bitter**. We won't be going back!

wendy
waytogo

SPOTLIGHT *adjectives ending in -y*

Adjectives ending in *-y* are often used to describe flavours and smells, e.g. **salty**, **spicy**, **creamy**, **fruity**, **juicy**, **greasy** (= full of oil from cooking), etc. They can mean 'full of something'.

■ *This soup's very **salty**.*

Or they can mean 'having a similar flavour/smell'.

■ *chicken with a **spicy** sauce*

■ *a wine with a **fruity** smell*

GLOSSARY

appetizing	(of food) that looks or smells attractive, making you feel hungry. An appetite is a strong desire for sth, especially food.	lean	(of meat) having little or no fat
stale	(of food, especially bread; also of air) old and not fresh	tough	(of meat) difficult to cut and eat OPP tender
ripe	(of fruit) ready to be picked and eaten	raw	not cooked
bland	(of food) lacking in taste and flavour SYN tasteless	rich	(of food) containing a lot of fat, butter, eggs, sugar, cream, etc, which makes you feel full very quickly
rare	(of meat) only cooked a short time (still red inside). Other ways of cooking meat are medium or well done .	fattening	(of food) that makes people fat
		bitter	having a sharp unpleasant taste; not sweet. We use sour to describe the taste of a lemon.

1 Underline the possible answers. One, two or three may be possible.

- The meat was very *lean / bitter / tender*.
- The chocolate was *greasy / sweet / rich*.
- The vegetables were *tasteless / bland / stale*.
- The bread was *fresh / raw / stale*.
- The soup was *salty / tender / ripe*.
- My steak was *rare / well done / tough*.
- The chips were *ripe / greasy / sour*.
- The peaches were *tasteless / sweet / ripe*.

2 Complete the phrases in a suitable way.

- You don't want bread that is
- You don't want fruit that isn't
- You don't want meat that is very
- You don't want coffee that is too
- If you're on a diet, you don't want food that is
- And you always want food to look

3 Complete the words in the text.

We found a table by the window. I had quite an (1) a after our long walk, and I started with the Thai soup which should be hot and (2) s It was, and the flavours were really good. Unfortunately, it was also a bit too (3) s, so I needed to drink quite a lot of water with it. My steak was nice and (4) l and cooked just as I like it, i.e. not completely (5) r but very (6) r Unfortunately, the pepper sauce was quite (7) b (I like it hot and very peppery), and the chips with it were a bit (8) g I finished with a chocolate pudding. It was quite (9) r but still very nice.



TEST YOURSELF

B Live to eat or eat to live

While some people live to eat, I **couldn't care less** about food. In the morning I have a **mug** of **instant coffee** and **cereal** if I'm lucky. I then take a **packed lunch** (a sandwich and a banana) or **pop in** to the **self-service canteen** for something around 12.30. In the evening, I generally **heat something up** that I've bought in the supermarket, then eat it on a **tray** on my **lap** while watching TV. At the weekend, I **treat myself to a takeaway**. I think my most important piece of kitchen equipment is probably my **tin opener**.



GLOSSARY

I couldn't care less (about sth/sb) inf	= it does not matter to me at all (This can sound a bit rude.)	self-service	(of a restaurant, shop, etc.) where you serve yourself and then pay.
instant	(of food) that can be prepared quickly and easily, usually by adding hot water: instant coffee	canteen	the place in a school, office, factory, etc. where the people who work there can get meals
cereal	a food that is made of grain, often eaten for breakfast with milk	heat (sth) (up)	become or make sth hot or warm
packed lunch	food that you prepare at home and take with you to eat at work or school	treat sb/yourself (to sth)	give sb/yourself sth special; pay for sth for sb else
pop in (to somewhere)	make a quick visit somewhere, e.g. a shop or a person's home	takeaway	food that you buy in a restaurant but eat somewhere else
		tin opener	a tool that you use for opening a tin of food SYN can opener

4 Finish the words or phrases.

- Where's the tin _____?
- This restaurant is self-_____.
- You just have to heat the meal _____.
- Have a chocolate. Go on, treat _____!
- You decide. I couldn't care _____.
- Mum made me a packed _____.

5 Complete the dialogues.

- Are you going out tonight? ~ Yes, I'm _____ Jess to an expensive meal.
- I haven't got real coffee. ~ That's OK. _____ is fine.
- Could I have tea rather than coffee? ~ Sure. Cup or _____?
- Where shall I put the _____ of drinks? ~ Oh, on the dining-room table, please.
- Do you want to stay in or go out? ~ I couldn't _____ less. You decide.
- Shall we go out to eat? ~ No, let's get a _____ and come back here.
- Why were you late? ~ Oh, I just _____ in to see Carmen on my way home.
- Do they have waiters in the new café? ~ No, it's all _____.

6 Complete the questions.

- Do you drink real coffee or _____ coffee?
- Do you drink coffee out of a cup or a _____?
- Do you have _____ with milk for breakfast, or do you prefer something hot?
- Would you be happy with a _____ lunch instead of a cooked meal?
- Do you eat in a school or office _____?
- Do you always cook fresh food or are you happy to _____ prepared or frozen food?
- Do you often get a _____ rather than cook at home?
- How do you _____ yourself if you want to eat something special?
- Do you ever eat food on your _____ while watching TV?

7 ABOUT YOU Write your answers to Exercise 6, or talk to another student.

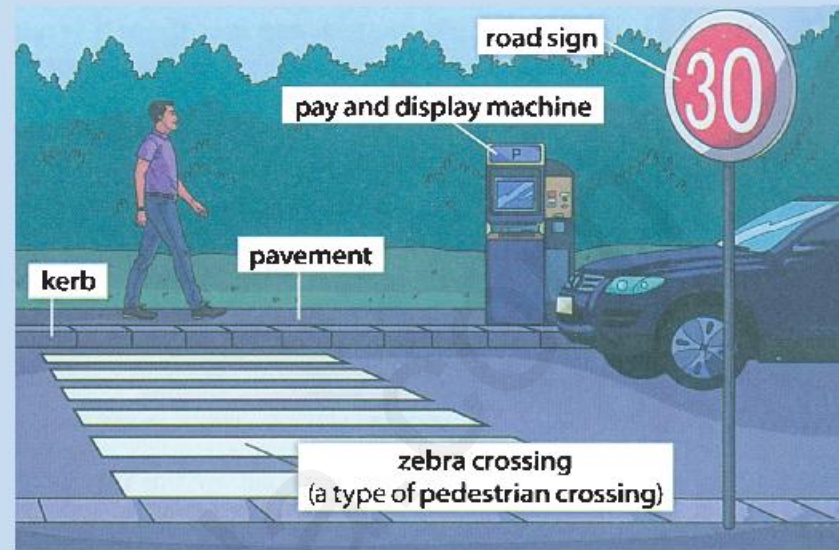
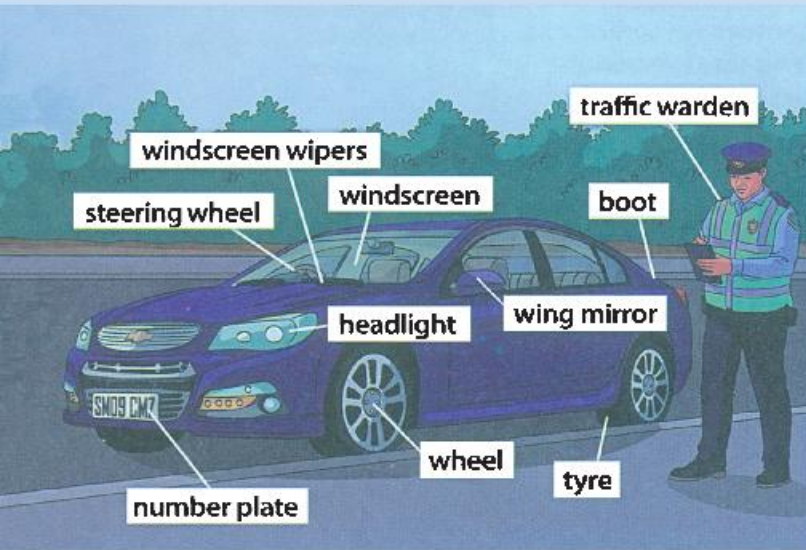
.....

.....

.....



A The car



1 Combine words in the box to form eight compound nouns.

wing	steering	pedestrian	road	parking	traffic	windscreen	warden
number	crossing	wheel	wiper	mirror	plate	meter	sign

.....

.....

2 What is it?

- It's on the outside of the wheel.
- You look through it when you're driving.
- It's where people walk.
- You park next to it.
- It identifies your car.
- It helps people to cross the road.

3 Complete the sentences.

- If you want to ...
- change direction, turn the
 - store luggage, open the
 - see in the rain, turn on the
 - see at night, turn on the
 - overtake, look in your
 - know the speed limit, look for a

4 ABOUT YOU AND YOUR COUNTRY Write your answers, or talk to another student.

- Do you have zebra crossings in your country? Do motorists stop for pedestrians?
- Do you have and use pay and display machines? What methods of payment are there?
- Do you have traffic wardens? What is your attitude to them?
- Do you fit special tyres on your car in the winter?
- Do you have automatic headlights and/or windscreen wipers? If so, are they helpful?
- Do people park on the pavement in your country?

TEST YOURSELF

B Driving a car

- The first thing you have to do is start the car and **pull away** from the kerb.
- You **steer** the car to control its direction.
- If you want to go faster, you **accelerate**.
- If you want to **slow down**, you **put on the brakes**.
- If you want to go back, you **reverse**.
- If you change direction suddenly, e.g. to avoid hitting something, you **swerve**.
- If you drive fast on a wet road and **brake** too quickly, you may **skid**.
- If you pass another car going in the same direction, you **overtake**.
- With a **manual** car, you need to **change gear** all the time (from 1 to 5/6 and reverse).
- You need to be **alert** at all times and **on the lookout** for any **potential** hazards.

GLOSSARY

pull away (from sth)	(of a vehicle) start moving
accelerate	(of a vehicle or person) start to go faster SYN speed up; OPP slow down; accelerator <i>n</i> the pedal in a car, etc. that you press to control the speed
skid	slide sideways or forwards in an uncontrolled way
manual	With a manual car, you operate the gears by hand. OPP automatic
alert	watching or listening with all your attention: be on the alert (for sth/sb)
be on the lookout (for sth/sb)	pay attention in order to see, find or avoid sth
potential	that may possibly happen SYN possible
hazard	a danger or risk hazardous <i>adj</i>

5 Cover the text and glossary, then complete the definitions.

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1 pull away = start | 5 steer = control the of the vehicle |
| 2 manual = operated by | 6 skid = slide because you have control of the vehicle |
| 3 be on the lookout = pay | |
| 4 swerve = change direction | |

6 Replace the underlined words with words that keep the same meaning.

- You need to speed up.
- I can't go back any further.
- Ice can be a real danger.
- Birds are a possible problem.
- You can't pass another car here.
- You have to be on the alert.
- I changed direction suddenly to avoid the child crossing the road.
- OK, you can move forward now.

7 Complete the sentences in a suitable way.

- You shouldn't on a bridge.
- You shouldn't the car with one hand.
- When you slow, you should gradually, not suddenly.
- You should always be when you drive. If you feel tired, take a break.
- people shouldn't drink and drive. otherwise, they are a danger to themselves and others.
- If you skid, take your foot off the brake and change to a higher
- I don't know why people drive manual cars. It's much better to drive an

8 ABOUT YOU Do you agree with the sentences in Exercise 7, and do you always follow the advice? Write your answers, or talk to another student.

.....

.....

.....



TEST YOURSELF



ambulance



helicopter

We reported earlier this morning on a major **incident** on the M5 just before the Gloucester **Service Station**. **Eyewitness** reports say a large lorry **pulled out** from the **inside lane** and **collided with** a BMW that was overtaking. The lorry then **spilled** part of its **load** of wood, causing a **massive pile-up** as vehicles crashed into falling **logs**. The driver of the BMW was reported to be in a **critical condition** and has been taken by **helicopter** to Bristol Southmeads Hospital, while **ambulances** have taken a further six or seven **casualties** to a nearby Gloucester hospital. We understand a passenger in the BMW died **at the scene** of the accident.

Two **lanes** of the motorway are now completely **blocked** and will be for some time, according to accident investigators. 'Vehicles are **scattered** all over the motorway and the damage is **extensive**,' said one. 'It's just **chaos** at the moment.' The police are advising motorists to **exit via Junction 12**, or avoid the area completely, if at all possible.



GLOSSARY

incident	sth that happens, especially sth unusual or unpleasant	log	a thick piece of wood that has fallen or been cut from a tree
service station	a place at the side of a motorway where there is a restaurant, toilets, petrol, etc.	critical	dangerous or serious: <i>a patient in a critical condition</i>
eyewitness	a person who has seen a crime, accident, etc. and can describe it afterwards SYN witness	casualty	a person who is killed or injured in an accident or a war
pull out lane	(of a car, etc.) move away from the side of a road	scene	the place where sth happens: <i>at the scene of the crash/crime</i>
collide (with sth/sb)	crash into sth; hit sth very hard while moving	block	make it difficult or impossible for sth/sb to pass
spill	go over the edge of a container by accident; make sth do this	scatter	spread over a large area
load	sth that is being carried (usually in large amounts) by a person, vehicle, etc. load v put a large amount of sth into sth else	extensive	large in area or amount: <i>extensive damage</i>
massive pile-up	very big SYN huge a crash that involves several cars	chaos	a state of great confusion and a lack of order chaotic adj
		exit	a place where traffic can leave a road or motorway exit v
		via	through a place
		junction	a place where roads meet; here, the place where a road goes off a motorway

1 The pronunciation of the letter 'i' is the same as in *bit* in eleven of the cases underlined. Which four are different? Use the APP to help you.

incident service witness collide spill critical collision pile-up massive extensive via exit

2 How many syllables are there in each of these words? Use the APP to help you.

blocked casualty via exit scattered chaos ambulance helicopter

3 Divide these words into the four groups below. A word may go in more than one group.

lane eyewitness collide ambulance exit junction pile-up helicopter casualties

TRANSPORT	PEOPLE	ROADS	ACCIDENT
.....
.....
.....
.....

4 What can you remember from the text? Write T (True) or F (False). Correct any sentences that are wrong.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1 The incident happened in the morning. | 7 There were two or three other casualties. |
| 2 Nobody saw what actually happened. | 8 Two lanes of the motorway are now open. |
| 3 A lorry collided with a BMW. | 9 There is a lot of damage to vehicles. |
| 4 The lorry spilled a load of bricks. | 10 Police are now advising motorists to enter via junction 12 of the motorway. |
| 5 One person died on the way to hospital. | |
| 6 An ambulance took the driver of the BMW to hospital. | |

5 Right or wrong? Write R or W, and correct any definitions that are wrong.

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1 If you <i>pull out</i> in a car, you get out while it is moving. | 6 <i>Scattered</i> means in lots of different places. |
| 2 A <i>junction</i> is a place where you turn left or right. | 7 If you <i>collide with</i> something, you almost hit it. |
| 3 <i>Massive</i> means very big. | 8 <i>Chaos</i> is complete confusion. |
| 4 A <i>lane</i> is the side of a road. | 9 An <i>ambulance</i> takes ill or injured people to hospital. |
| 5 <i>Casualties</i> are people walking by when an accident happens. | 10 If you <i>block</i> somebody, you hit them. |

6 Complete the sentences.

- We stopped at a on the M4 for petrol and to get something to eat.
- If the road is clear, you should stay in the inside of a motorway.
- We passed one lorry carrying a of material to one of the building sites.
- Lorry drivers, protesting against the rising cost of fuel, two lanes of the M32 today. The protest ended after an hour, and police described it as only a minor
- I was going to go on the motorway, but then decided to go the smaller villages, which was a nicer route. Unfortunately, there was an accident, with vehicles everywhere. It was
- Keep going until you get to a large with the A420. Turn right there.
- It was a bad accident and several cars suffered damage.
- The car crashed into a pile of at the side of the road. The wood went everywhere.
- There was a huge on the M3 this morning involving n-af a dozen vehicles. One person died and several are in a condition.
- If you're going to Bristol, take the M4 and at Junction 19 or 20.



A Conditions

English weather is unreliable, to say the least. We can have winters that are **bitterly cold** or extremely **mild**, and summers with long **spells** of hot weather when it can get very **humid**, or ones that stay generally cloudy and **dull**. Almost any day outside of summer can be mild or **chilly**. Equally possible are **torrential rain**, **thick fog**, **flashes of lightning**, **scattered showers** and the **odd rainbow**.

rainbow

GLOSSARY

to say the least	used to say that sth is much worse or more serious than you are saying	chilly	(of the weather) too cold to feel comfortable
bitterly cold	extremely cold	torrential rain	heavy rain SYN a downpour
mild	during cold weather, warmer than you expect	thick fog	= fog that is difficult to see through SYN dense fog
spell	a short period of time: a spell of hot/cold weather	flash	a sudden bright light that comes and goes quickly: a flash of lightning
humid	(of climate) warm and feeling slightly wet humidity n	scattered showers	rain spread over a large area or happening several times during a period of time
dull	(of the weather) not bright, with a lot of clouds	odd	not regular or fixed; happening occasionally

1 Which is worse, or are they the same?

- 1 cold OR bitterly cold
- 2 thick fog OR dense fog
- 3 hot OR hot and humid
- 4 a chilly day OR a mild day
- 5 torrential rain OR a downpour
- 6 a dull day OR a bright day
- 7 the odd shower OR scattered showers
- 8 quite wet OR quite wet, to say the least

2 Replace the underlined word(s) with a single word that keeps the same meaning.

- 1 We've had a number of showers today.
- 2 We had a short period of cold weather last week.
- 3 It's been really cold this winter.
- 4 We had very heavy rain this morning.
- 5 I drove through some very bad fog.
- 6 It was too cold to feel comfortable today.
- 7 I thought it would be cold, but actually it was warmer than I expected.
- 8 We get the occasional spell of hot weather.

3 Complete the texts.

While we were out, we had a sudden (1) of rain followed by several (2) of lightning. It was a bit frightening and we also got very wet, to say the (3) But then the rain stopped, the sun came out and there was a beautiful (4) By the end of the day I was sweating: it was hot and the (5) was unbearable.

It was (6) cold for May, and even by midday it still felt quite (7) Yesterday had been quite hot, but today was cloudy and (8) with (9) expected later, though not heavy or lasting for any period of time.

TEST YOURSELF

B Effects of weather

Many people in this country listen to the **weather forecast** very **closely**, as it can have a **significant** impact on people's lives. Farmers are obviously **dependent** on weather conditions for the success of their crops, but the weather affects everyone:

- * A **heatwave** can eventually lead to **water shortages** and **drought**.
- * When there is heavy snow and **blizzards**, traffic **comes to a standstill**, and this causes **widespread disruption** on the roads.
- * **Gales** cause damage to people's property, and this may be **widespread**.

GLOSSARY

weather forecast	a description of the weather that is expected in the coming days
closely	carefully and with interest
significant	important enough to be noticed and have an effect
dependent (on sth/sb)	needing sth/sb to support you
heatwave	a period of unusually hot weather
shortage	a situation where there is not enough of sth OPP surplus
drought	a long period without rain
blizzard	a bad storm with strong winds and a lot of snow
come to a standstill	reach a situation in which all activity or movement has stopped ALSO bring sth to a standstill
widespread disruption	found or happening over a large area: widespread damage a situation in which it is difficult for sth to continue in the normal way
gale	a very strong wind. A breeze is a light, usually pleasant, wind.

4 Is the pronunciation of the underlined letters the same or different? Write **S** or **D**. Use the **APP** to help you.

- | | | | |
|---------------------------------------|-------|--------------------------------------|-------|
| 1 <u>w</u> idespread <u>h</u> eatwave | ..... | 4 <u>g</u> ale <u>d</u> amage | ..... |
| 2 <u>s</u> hortage <u>d</u> amage | ..... | 5 <u>s</u> urplus <u>d</u> isruption | ..... |
| 3 <u>s</u> urplus <u>b</u> lizzard | ..... | 6 <u>d</u> rought <u>t</u> hought | ..... |

5 Circle the correct answer.

- 1 A surplus is *too much* / *not enough* of something.
- 2 A breeze is a *strong* / *light* wind.
- 3 Disruption *causes* / *doesn't cause* problems.
- 4 If you are dependent on something, you *need* / *would like* it.
- 5 A blizzard usually has *strong winds* / *very low temperatures*.
- 6 A significant effect is quite *small* / *large*.
- 7 A forecast talks about the *future* / *past*.
- 8 A heatwave is a *day* / *period* of hot weather.

6 Complete the texts.

The weather (1) yesterday predicted heavy snow during the night, and they were right. Traffic came to a (2) on the A4 this morning, and there was widespread (3) on many of the minor roads as well. I will certainly listen (4) to the forecast tonight!

Farmers in this country are (5) on rain for their crops to grow and flourish, and if the current (6) continues with no further rain, it will be a second year of (7), and that means serious water (8)

We had 65 mph (9) today, and this has caused (10) damage to a number of houses. If these conditions get worse, the damage will become more (11)

7 ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY Write answers to the questions, or ask another student.

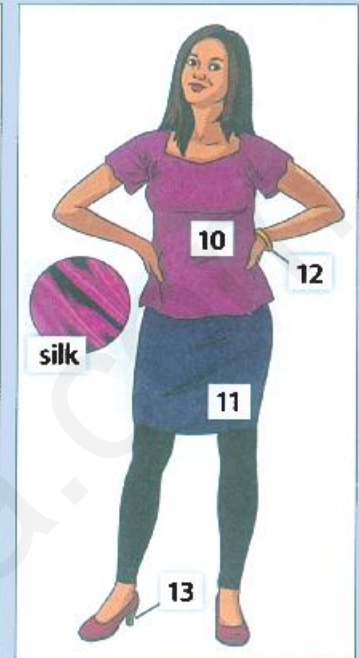
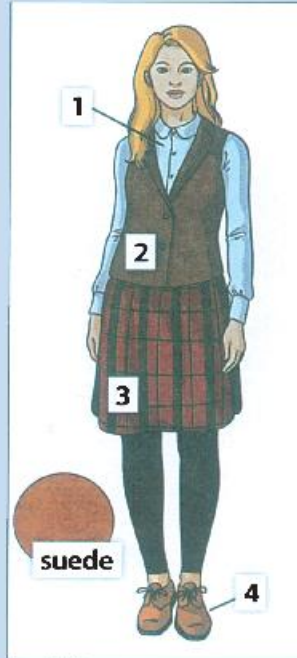
- 1 Which of the weather conditions on pages 64 and 65 are common in your country?
- 2 What effect do they have on people's lives?
- 3 Which of the weather conditions are rare in your country?



TEST YOURSELF

A Different styles

- 1 plain top (without a pattern)
- 2 waistcoat
- 3 check/checked skirt
- 4 suede shoes
- 5 cap
- 6 strap
- 7 short-sleeved shirt
- 8 V-neck(ed) sleeveless jumper
- 9 sandals
- 10 silk top
- 11 tight-fitting skirt (OPP loose-fitting)
- 12 bracelet
- 13 high-heeled shoes



1 Who wears the following most often? Is it men, women, or both equally?

- | | | | |
|------------------------|-------|---------------------|-------|
| 1 caps | ..... | 6 V-neck jumpers | ..... |
| 2 suede shoes | ..... | 7 high-heeled shoes | ..... |
| 3 silk shirts | ..... | 8 sandals | ..... |
| 4 short-sleeved shirts | ..... | 9 waistcoats | ..... |
| 5 bracelets | ..... |  |  |

2 Complete the sentences with a suitable word.

- 1 I really like men in three-piece suits, with trousers, jacket and
- 2 I've got one really tight-fitting dress, but usually I prefer clothes.
- 3 My sister wears flat shoes most of the time but shoes for special occasions.
- 4 I don't like bright patterns, so I usually wear shirts.
- 5 My sister has a very glamorous, tight-fitting black and white skirt.
- 6 I wear a lot in the summer because my feet get so hot.
- 7 Most men only wear short-..... shirts in the summer.
- 8 Since my dad went bald, he has started wearing a to keep his head warm.
- 9 I've got a grey backpack with adjustable shoulder
- 10 Some men like wearing-fitting T-shirts to show off their muscular bodies.

3 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or talk to another student.

- 1 Do you have any clothes in suede or silk? If so, what?
- 2 Do you often wear sandals in the summer? If not, what do you prefer?
- 3 Do you wear a lot of short-sleeved tops or shirts? If so, when?
- 4 Do any members of your family wear a cap? If so, why?
- 5 Do you tend to prefer plain tops and shirts, or something with a pattern?
- 6 Do you ever wear waistcoats or V-neck jumpers?

TEST YOURSELF

B Special occasions

For my brother's **stag party**, we all had to march round town wearing **kilts**¹, with large **badges**² on our chests saying: *If lost, return to Scotland.*

At a recent **fancy-dress** party, my husband went as a woman cleaner wearing a **wig** and **apron**³, and carrying a **bucket**⁴ of water and a **mop**⁵. He looked silly.

I like to **dress up** for weddings and wear something **elegant**. The only problem in Britain is the weather. You can be standing around in a **glamorous outfit**, **shivering** at the same time.

In my house, **barbecues** are very **casual affairs**: T-shirt, shorts and **flip-flops**⁶.



GLOSSARY

stag party	(ALSO stag night) a party for men only given for a man shortly before his wedding. A hen party is the same for women.	glamorous	looking more exciting or attractive than ordinary people
fancy dress	special clothes you wear to a party where people dress up to look like a different person	outfit	a set of clothes that are worn together for a particular occasion
wig	a covering made of real or false hair that you wear on your head	shiver	shake slightly, especially because you are cold or frightened
dress up	put on more formal clothes, usually for a special occasion	barbecue	(abbreviation BBQ) an outdoor meal or party when food is cooked on a metal frame on an open fire
elegant	attractive and showing a good sense of style	casual affair	very relaxed and informal an event or situation

4 Is the pronunciation of the underlined letters the same or different? Write S or D. Use the APP to help you.

- 1 fancy dress 3 wig stag 5 glamorous elegant 7 glamorous bucket
 2 stag casual 4 shiver casual 6 affair apron 8 bucket dress up

5 What's the answer?

- 1 You might wear one if you haven't got any hair.
- 2 You might wear one to do the cooking.
- 3 You go to one of these pretending to be someone else.
- 4 You might need this to wash the kitchen floor.
- 5 People from Scotland sometimes wear these.
- 6 You might do this if you are very cold.
- 7 Men and women sometimes wear these on their feet on a beach.
- 8 People may wear one of these to show they belong to an organization or support something.
- 9 People often like to do this to look elegant for special occasions.
- 10 You have these outdoors and cook food on an open fire.
- 11 People like to look this to appear more attractive and exciting than ordinary people.
- 12 You might buy this to look elegant at a special occasion.

6 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or talk to another student.

- 1 Have you ever been to a stag or hen party? If so, what was it like?
- 2 Have you been to any fancy-dress parties? If so, who did you pretend to be?
- 3 Do you like dressing up? If so, what occasions do you dress up for?
- 4 When you buy clothes, do you often buy complete outfits? If so, why?
- 5 Do you prefer to wear casual clothes most of the time? If so, what do you usually wear?
- 6 Do you often go to barbecues? If so, are they fairly casual affairs, and what do you usually wear?

TEST YOURSELF

A Furniture and household objects



1 socket



2 plug



3 stool



4 (door)mat

5 Hoover / vacuum cleaner *n*
hoover/vacuum *v*

6 ironing board



7 (dust)bin



8 smoke alarm

9 radiator (part of a
central heating system)

10 broom



11 chest of drawers



12 drawers



13 doorbell



14 bunk beds



15 bookcase



16 letter box

1 Is the pronunciation of the underlined letters the same or different? Write S or D.

Use the **APP** to help you.

- 1 vacuum plug 3 broom ook 5 hoover broom 7 bookcase broom
2 plug dustbin 4 drawer oor 6 bunk dustbin 8 vacuum radiator

2 Combine words in the box to form compounds for ten household objects.

bunk cleaner book heating central dust alarm door ironing chest
smoke board beds bell of drawers case vacuum box bin letter

.....
.....

3 Do you need one hand or two hands to use these objects? Could you use any without hands?

doorbell broom doormat plug radiator dustbin hoover socket

4 Complete the sentences.

- 1 Have you got a? I need to sweep the kitchen floor.
- 2 It's cold in here. The central heating is working, but one isn't enough for a big room.
- 3 I haven't got any chairs in the kitchen, but you can sit on this
- 4 I can only use three-pin plugs in this
- 5 Could you wipe your feet on the when you come in?
- 6 Would you take that rubbish out and put it in the
- 7 I need to buy a new chest of
- 8 Could you the living room? There's some stuff on the carpet.
- 9 My sister and I slept in beds when we were little. I always wanted the top one.
- 10 I had to fit a new letter because ours was too small.

5 ABOUT YOU Which of the items at the top of the page do you have in your home, and where are they? Write your answers, or tell another student.



TEST YOURSELF

B Household chores



MUST DO THIS WEEK!

- clean the inside of the oven – it's very **greasy**
- order a **dozen** bottles of wine for Jacinta's party
- **get hold of** a **plumber's** number to fix the **dripping** tap in the **loo**
- get new **blinds**² for the **spare** bedroom
- paint **step**³ in front of the **porch**⁴
- get **rough estimate** for painting the **outside** of the house

GLOSSARY

greasy	covered in fat and oil from cooking
grease <i>n</i>	
dozen	twelve half a dozen = six
get hold of sth	find sth that will be useful get hold of sb find or make contact with sb
plumber	a person whose job is to fix problems with water, pipes, radiators, etc.
loo <i>inf</i>	a toilet
spare	not used now but kept for possible future use: a spare room/tyre
estimate	a clear idea of the cost, size, etc. of sth: a rough estimate (= an approximate idea) estimate <i>v</i>
outside	the outer side or surface of sth SYN exterior

6 Is the pronunciation of the underlined letters the same or different? Write S or D. Use the APP to help you.

- | | | |
|---|------------------------------------|--|
| 1 estimate <u>n</u> estimate <u>v</u> | 3 dozen <u>rou</u> gh | 5 rou <u>gh</u> <u>plum</u> ber |
| 2 estimate <u>bl</u> ind | 4 <u>h</u> alf <u>s</u> pare | 6 <u>plum</u> ber <u>bl</u> inds |

7 Replace the underlined words with words that have a similar meaning.

- 1 Could you get me six eggs?
- 2 Is anyone in the toilet?
- 3 Is the room at the end a free room?
- 4 I need to contact a builder.
- 5 Do you have the number of a person who can fix leaking pipes?
- 6 I need to get an idea of the cost?
- 7 The inside of the oven gets covered in fat and oil.

8 Complete the sentences.

- 1 I want to get of some wood to make a small gate for the front garden.
- 2 The of the house needs painting. We'll do it when the weather improves.
- 3 Be careful walking down the : they're a bit dangerous when it's been raining.
- 4 You always get some on the wall around the cooker – it's from all the fat.
- 5 We decided to build a to give the front door more protection from the rain.
- 6 The tap in the sink keeps I must ring the plumber.
- 7 Six won't be enough. Could you get me a bottles of fizzy water?
- 8 We used to have curtains in the bedroom, but now we've got



A Before, during and after sleep



1

BEFORE: You might be **exhausted** after a busy day, perhaps feel **sleepy**, start **yawning**¹ and decide it's time for bed. You might wear **pyjamas**² or, if you're a woman, possibly a **nightdress/nightie**³ (*inf*). When you get into bed, you might **set the alarm**⁴. Soon, if you're lucky, you will **fall asleep**.



2



3

DURING: When you're asleep, you have dreams and possibly **nightmares**. Some people **snore**. At this point they're **fast asleep**.



4

AFTER: 7.00am. The alarm **goes off**. It might wake you up, or you might be **wide awake** already. People without an alarm might **oversleep**, others might decide to **have a lie-in**.

GLOSSARY

exhausted	very tired, either physically or mentally SYN worn out
sleepy	tired and ready to go to sleep
fall asleep	start sleeping SYN go to sleep/get to sleep; get back to sleep sleep again after you have woken up
nightmare	a bad or frightening dream
snore	breathe noisily while you are asleep
fast asleep	sleeping deeply SYN in a deep sleep OPP wide awake
go off	(of an alarm) ring or make a noise
oversleep	sleep longer than you should or want
have a lie-in	stay in bed later than usual

SPOTLIGHT *sleep*

There are a number of words and phrases derived from **sleep**:
A heavy sleeper sleeps well. **A light sleeper** wakes easily.
A sleeper can also be a night train with beds for passengers.
A sleeping bag is a large bag you sleep in when you are camping.
A sleeping pill/tablet is a medicine you take to help you sleep.

1 Cover the glossary and spotlight. What words or phrases are being defined?

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1 very tired, physically or mentally | 6 stay in bed later than usual |
| 2 clothes some women wear in bed | 7 a night train with beds for passengers |
| 3 medicine to help you sleep | 8 open your mouth wide because you are tired |
| 4 sleep longer than you want to | 9 You sleep in this in a tent |
| 5 a bad dream | 10 breathe noisily while asleep |

2 Replace the underlined word(s) with words or phrases that keep the same meaning.

I was really tired, so I went to bed quite early last night. I got to sleep without a problem and very soon I was in a deep sleep. Unfortunately, in the middle of the night, I had a bad dream, which woke me up. After that, I was awake for ages and didn't fall asleep again until about half past four, so when the alarm rang just after seven, I didn't hear it and I carried on sleeping. When I finally woke up, I still felt a bit tired.

- 1
- 2
- 3
- 4
- 5
- 6
- 7
- 8

3 Complete the questions?

- 1 Are you a sleeper or a sleeper?
- 2 Do you normally wear in bed?
- 3 Do you normally set an when you go to bed?
- 4 Do you usually feel awake as soon as you wake up?
- 5 Do you often have a at the weekend?
- 6 Do other people ever tell you that you when you're asleep?
- 7 Have you ever taken sleeping ?
- 8 Do you own or ever use a sleeping ?

ABOUT YOU

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

4 ABOUT YOU Write your own answers to the questions in Exercise 3, or talk to another student.



B Sleep habits

Antonio

I sleep like a log wherever I am.

Ella

If I eat late, it **disturbs** my sleep and I often **have a restless night**.

Hiroko

I work late and get up early so that **restricts** my sleep to about five hours.

Raul

Lack of sleep makes me really **irritable**.

Suzanna

I sleep well **as long as** I establish a good routine and **stick to it**.

Carla

I'm **sensitive to light** and need to sleep in **total darkness**.

Nick

I **suffer from insomnia**, so I never get much sleep.

Agnieszka

During the day, I often **have a nap**.

Omar

When there are things on my **mind** – like exams – I sleep badly.

GLOSSARY	
<p>sleep like a log sleep very well OPP have a restless night</p> <p>disturb stop sb doing sth, e.g. working, sleeping or thinking</p> <p>restrict put a limit on sb/sth</p> <p>irritable becoming angry easily</p> <p>as long as on condition that SYN provided that</p> <p>establish start or create sth such as a system, organization, etc.</p> <p>stick to sth <i>inf</i> continue with sth and not change to anything else</p>	<p>sensitive (to sth) easily affected by sth which may cause pain or upset</p> <p>darkness the state of being dark: in total darkness</p> <p>insomnia if you suffer from insomnia, you are often unable to sleep.</p> <p>have a nap have a short sleep, e.g. for half an hour</p> <p>on my mind if sth is on your mind, you're thinking or worrying about it.</p>

5 The pronunciation of the letter 'i' is the same as in *bit* in most of these examples. Which two are different? Use the APP to help you.

disturb restrict irritable establish stick sensitive provided insomnia

6 The pronunciation of the letter 's' is the same as in *sit* in most of these examples. Which two are different? Use the APP to help you.

sleep disturb restless establish as long as stick darkness insomnia

7 Combine words in the box to form six phrases.

have night	sleep suffer from	insomnia like a log	have a restless my mind	a nap darkness	in total have something on
---------------	----------------------	------------------------	----------------------------	-------------------	-------------------------------

8 Complete the sentences with a word or phrase.

- 1 I get very if I don't sleep well.
- 2 I sleep well I'm in my own bed. I don't sleep well in strange beds.
- 3 After a relaxing bath and a hot drink, I always sleep
- 4 Try to go to bed at the same time every night. Have a routine and to it.
- 5 I had too much to eat and drink last night, and I had a very night.
- 6 I didn't sleep well last night because I've got a lot of things on
- 7 Most experts say that you need to a bedtime routine to sleep well.
- 8 I've been staying up late to revise for exams and that has the amount of sleep I get.
- 9 If I'm during the night, I find it difficult to get back to sleep.

9 **ABOUT YOU** Read the statements at the top of the page again. Are they true for you? Write your answers under each statement, or ask another student.



A Spending and saving

Are you good at looking after your money? For example, do you:

- keep a clear record of **outgoings**, e.g. **debit card** payments, or do you find you are largely **unaware** of how much you are spending?
- keep your account **in credit** all the time, or are you sometimes **overdrawn**?
- pay your credit card bills **promptly**, or do you allow **debts** to **mount up**?
- check all the **transactions** in your **bank statements**, or do you just **ignore** them?
- think you're **cautious** with money, or do you waste large **sums** of money?

GLOSSARY

outgoings (pl)	the amount of money a person or business has to spend regularly. SYN expenditure OPP income the money you earn from work or savings
debit card	a plastic card used for taking money directly from your bank account
unaware (of sth)	not knowing or realizing that sth is happening OPP aware; awareness <i>n</i>
be in credit	If you are in credit , there is money in your bank account. OPP be overdrawn
promptly	without delay prompt <i>adj</i>
debt	the amount of money you owe sb
mount up	increase gradually in size SYN build up, accumulate
transaction	a piece of business between people. In banking, you put money into an account, or take it out / withdraw it.
bank statement	a printed record of activities in an account over a particular period
ignore	pay no attention to sth
cautious	careful about what you say or do, to avoid mistakes; not taking risks
sum (of sth)	an amount of money

1 Is the pronunciation of the underlined letters the same or different? Write **S** or **D**. Use the **APP** to help you.

- 1 expenditure transaction 3 debt debit 5 aware cautious
- 2 cautious withdraw 4 aware overdrawn 6 withdraw ignore

2 Complete the sentences.

- 1 I'm completely of how often I make card payments because I never write them down. I have to go online to look at my bank in order to see all the I've made.
- 2 I keep a reasonable of money in my bank account – enough to keep it in And I like to pay all my bills; that way I don't forget.
- 3 I didn't keep a record of my this month. Now I'm and I've got various
- 4 My sister is very stupid: she even letters from her bank telling her she needs to money her account.

3 Complete the dialogues with a single word.

- 1 Did you take some money out? ~ Yes, I £100.
- 2 Is there money in your account? ~ No, I'm afraid I'm
- 3 Do you know what you spend? ~ Yes, I keep a record of all my
- 4 Do you always pay credit card bills? ~ Yes, otherwise debts can up.
- 5 Is he careful with money? ~ Yes, he's very
- 6 Does the company want the money now? ~ Yes, they have asked for payment.
- 7 She doesn't earn much, does she? ~ No, she's on quite a low
- 8 Does he waste a lot of money? ~ Yes, he has no of what things should cost.

4 **ABOUT YOU** Write your answers to the questionnaire at the top of the page, or talk to another student.



TEST YOURSELF

B Looking after your money

Creating a personal budget

Few people bother to **budget**, which is why so many are in debt. You must **calculate** the total income coming in each month, and the total going out, both regular outgoings and all other expenses. Then, **subtract** the expenses from the income. If there's a **surplus**, don't spend it: **pay off** any money you **owe** (in other words, your debts), and keep the rest for emergencies. If there is a **shortfall**, then you must take action. Consider where you can **economize** and **make cutbacks**. And don't expect anyone else to **subsidize** you and pay your debts.

GLOSSARY

budget	plan how much to spend and what to spend it on. A budget is the amount of money available to spend with a plan for spending it.
calculate	use numbers to find a total number, amount or distance SYN work (sth) out ; calculation <i>n</i>
subtract sth (from sth)	take one number from another to calculate the difference SYN take sth away (from sth)
pay sth off	finish paying money that you owe for sth
owe	have to pay sb for sth that you have received or borrowed
economize	reduce the amount of money, time, goods, etc. that you use SYN make cutbacks
subsidize	give money to sb to help them pay for sth subsidy <i>n</i>

SPOTLIGHT *surplus, deficit, shortage, shortfall*

A **surplus** is more of something than is necessary. If it is money, the opposite is a **deficit**; if it is food, petrol, etc, the opposite is a **shortage**.

A **shortfall** is the difference between what you have and what you need.

5 Underline the words connected with money, and tick the words connected with numbers.

budget owe calculate economize work something out
subsidize subtract pay sth off deficit take sth away

6 Is the pronunciation of the underlined letters the same or different? Write S or D. Use the APP to help you.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1 <u>s</u> ubtract <u>s</u> ubsidize | 4 <u>c</u> utback <u>c</u> alculate |
| 2 <u>s</u> ubsidize <u>e</u> conomize | 5 <u>b</u> udget <u>c</u> utback |
| 3 <u>d</u> eficit <u>s</u> ubsidy | 6 <u>o</u> we <u>e</u> conomize |

7 Circle the odd one out, then write what the other two words have in common.

- | | |
|--|-------|
| 1 a) shortfall b) surplus c) deficit | ..... |
| 2 a) shortage b) calculation c) shortfall | ..... |
| 3 a) economize b) take away c) subtract | ..... |
| 4 a) economize b) make cutbacks c) subsidize | ..... |
| 5 a) deficit b) shortage c) budget | ..... |
| 6 a) work out b) calculate c) pay off | ..... |

8 Complete the texts.

The floods in the spring are now causing severe food (1) throughout the country, and this will leave many farmers with a significant (2) in their income, and perhaps hoping for a government (3) to help them.

I'm not careful with money and don't often budget, but then I decided to keep a record of my regular outgoings. At first, it was difficult to (4) all my expenses, but I managed after a while. One month, I realised I had a (5), and that I would have to (6)

I'm ashamed to say that when I went to university I was still unable to (7) So, I borrowed money and ended up (8) lots of money to different people. Eventually my parents came to the rescue and (9) me for much of the three years during my degree.

TEST YOURSELF

A Types of crime

Some of these crimes involve **threatening** people (= saying you will cause trouble for them, and possibly hurt them if they do not do what you want). Most of these crimes are also **deliberate** (= you intend to do them; **SYN intentional**), but not always.

GLOSSARY

manslaughter	(<i>slaughter</i> pronounced like <i>daughter</i>) killing sb illegally but not deliberately	blackmail	demanding money from a person by threatening to tell sb else a secret about them blackmail v. The person is a blackmailer .
arson	deliberately setting fire to sth, especially a building. The person is an arsonist .	kidnapping	taking sb away illegally and keeping them prisoner, especially in order to get money kidnap v. The person is a kidnapper .
rape	forcing sb to have sex, especially using violence rape v. The person is a rapist .	shoplifting	stealing goods from a shop by leaving without paying for them. The person is a shoplifter .
fraud	cheating sb in order to get money or goods illegally	mugging	attacking sb, or threatening to attack sb in order to steal their money, especially in a public place mug v. The person is a mugger .
bribery	giving money to sb to persuade them to help you, especially by doing sth dishonest bribe v		

1 Put the crimes in the three columns below.

shoplifting	mugging	manslaughter	bribery
arson	kidnapping	rape	fraud

involves violence

.....

may involve violence

.....

doesn't involve violence

.....

2 Circle the crimes which usually involve money.

arson	fraud	mugging
manslaughter	bribery	blackmail
shoplifting	rape	kidnapping

3 Write down the person who commits these crimes.

- | | |
|----------------------|---------------------|
| 1 shoplifting/ | 4 kidnapping/ |
| 2 blackmail/ | 5 rape/ |
| 3 arson/ | 6 mugging/ |

4 Complete the sentences.

- I was outside my office by a man with a knife who demanded money from me.
- He wasn't guilty of murder, but was found guilty of
- The boy was outside his home and held prisoner for weeks.
- There is often a notice in stores saying that '..... will be prosecuted'.
- He stopped the woman in the street, her with a knife, and took her money.
- The man accused of the girl insists that she agreed to have sex with him.
- He the policeman with both money and expensive holidays.
- He said he did it, but claims it was not
- She him by threatening to tell the police about the money he stole.
- He went to prison for credit card



TEST YOURSELF

B Causes of crime

What do you think?

- Some people think that it is the people closest to us when we are growing up who have the greatest responsibility for shaping our moral standards.
- Crime rates tend to be higher in slum areas, and for children from these areas, crime can become an attraction because it offers a way of becoming richer. They join gangs and drift into crime.
- Another cause is the abuse of alcohol and drugs which can force people into crime.
- Some argue it is personal weakness or parental neglect, made worse by a lack of discipline at home or in school, that leads people into crime.
- Some believe that if penalties for offenders were harsher, crime would go down.

GLOSSARY

moral	concerned with principles of right and wrong behaviour morals <i>n pl</i>
slum	an area of a city that is very poor and where the houses are in bad condition
attraction	a feature or quality that makes sth seem interesting and enjoyable
gang	a group of young people who often cause trouble
drift into sth	start doing sth without a particular plan or purpose
abuse	the use of sth in a way that is wrong or harmful: suffer abuse abuse <i>v</i>
parental	connected with parents
neglect	the fact of not giving enough care or attention to sb/sth neglect <i>v</i>
discipline	the practice of training people to obey rules and punishing them if they do not
penalty	a punishment for breaking a law, a rule or a contract
offender	a person who commits a crime
harsh	severe, strict or cruel

5 Circle the words which have a negative meaning.

slum attraction gang abuse discipline
neglect penalty parental moral harsh

6 Replace the underlined words with a single word that keeps the same meaning.

- 1 It's basically a very poor area of the city with houses in bad condition.
- 2 The parents have not given enough care and attention to these children.
- 3 Some of the children need better training to obey rules.
- 4 There's a very unpleasant group of youths waiting at the end of the street.
- 5 The children have suffered from wrong and harmful treatment.
- 6 Many people who commit crimes go on to commit further crimes.
- 7 It's all about knowing the difference between right and wrong.
- 8 If you see no future for yourself, crime is an exciting idea with possibilities of money.

7 Complete the sentences on the right. Keep the same meaning as the sentences on the left.

- 1 It's the responsibility of the parents. It's a
- 2 They have abused the children. The children have
- 3 The teenagers do what they like. The teenagers lack
- 4 The issue is all about right and wrong. It's a
- 5 The law is too soft. We need
- 6 I committed crimes with no real plan or purpose. I just
- 7 There hasn't been enough care and attention. There has been a lot of
- 8 Young people like money. For young people, money is a big

8 ABOUT YOU Look at the opinions about the causes of crime at the top of page. Do you agree? What about crimes committed by people who aren't poor?

.....

.....

.....



A The inner city

... the **inner** city streets became very narrow, so I parked the car and went the rest of the way on foot. I soon **regretted** that decision. The pavements were **filthy** with **litter**, and there was a gang of **youths hanging around** on one of the street corners. I started to feel **concerned for** my safety, so I turned into a long **passage** at the back of a factory. It was covered in **graffiti**, and two **homeless** young men were sleeping on the cold **damp** ground. It was a **depressing** place altogether.

GLOSSARY

inner	close to the centre of a place. The inner city is often associated with social and economic problems.
regret	(with an <i>-ing</i> form or noun) feel sorry that you did sth or that you did not do sth regret <i>n</i>
filthy	very dirty
litter	the paper that people don't want and leave on the ground
youth	a young man, usually one you do not have a good opinion of
hang around/ about <i>inf</i>	stay in or around a place not doing very much
concerned (about/for sth)	worried concern <i>n, v</i>
passage	a long narrow area with walls on either side that connects one room or place with another
graffiti <i>pl</i>	pictures or writing on a wall in a public place
homeless	having no home
damp	a little wet
depressing	making you feel very sad and without enthusiasm depressed very sad and without enthusiasm

1 Circle the words which usually suggest a negative idea.

regret filthy litter abandon damp
homeless hang around graffiti depressing concerned

2 Complete the definitions with a single word.

- filthy = very
- the inner city = parts of a city close to the centre
- regret = feel you did or did not do something.
- litter = paper left on the
- damp = a little
- concerned =
- depressing = making you feel
- graffiti = on a wall in a public place

3 Complete the sentences.

- You sometimes see quite a lot of people in big cities; it's very sad.
- We walked along a narrow from the park to the road.
- There was a lot of in the family when the children didn't arrive.
- It's not a nice area: you get a lot of hanging around.
- Two workmen were cleaning the off the side of a bridge.
- The street was filthy, and it was pouring with rain. It was very
- You often see teenagers around in the centre of town with nothing to do.
- It started to rain so I not taking an umbrella.

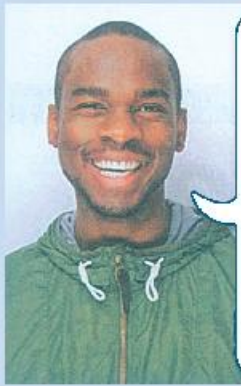
4 ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY Do you often see these things in your country? Write your answers, or talk to another student.

- litter on the ground
- graffiti
- homeless people sleeping in the street
- filthy pavements
- gangs of youths



TEST YOURSELF

B In the suburbs



I live in a block of flats that is **surrounded by** trees, which is rather nice. **On the whole**, it's considered a **desirable district** because it's a nice quiet **suburb**, near local shops and good schools, but also **handy** for town. The main **drawback** is that, although there is a pub **nearby**, it's not a particularly **lively area** – there's not much **going on** in the evenings, so you have to go into town for a **decent** nightlife. The other thing is that as time **goes on**, the area is getting more **built-up**, and **that's a shame**.

SPOTLIGHT *go on*

This phrasal verb has several meanings:

- 1 **be going on** be happening or taking place (as in the text)
- 2 (of time) pass **SYN go by**: *As time went on/by, things improved.*
- 3 (of a situation) continue: *It could go on like this for a long time.*

GLOSSARY

surround	be or go all around sth: be surrounded by sth ; surrounding <i>adj</i>	drawback	sth that is not good or causes problems SYN disadvantage
on the whole	generally, but not true in every case SYN in general, generally	nearby <i>adv, adj</i>	not far away in distance: <i>We went to a nearby restaurant.</i> (NOT <i>We went to a near restaurant.</i>)
desirable district	wanted, often by many people an area of a town or country that has particular features	lively	full of interest, with things to do
suburb	an area where a lot of people live, outside the centre of a town	decent	of a high enough standard: <i>They have decent food there.</i>
handy (for sth) inf	located near to things you need SYN convenient (for sth)	built-up	(of an area of land) with a lot of buildings
		shame	a fact or situation that makes you feel disappointed SYN pity : <i>That's a shame/pity. What a shame/pity.</i>

5 Do the words and phrases in italics have the same meaning? Write S or D.

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1 <i>In general / On the whole</i> it's a nice place. | 5 A <i>handy / lively</i> area. |
| 2 They live <i>nearby / next door</i> | 6 What's <i>going on / happening</i> here? |
| 3 It's <i>convenient / decent</i> | 7 The school is very <i>handy / built-up</i> |
| 4 What a <i>pity / shame</i> | 8 It's quite a poor <i>suburb / district</i> |

6 Complete the sentences with a word or phrase.

- 1 There used to be lots of open spaces, but now it's a really area.
- 2 I live in a pleasant, about two kilometres from the centre.
- 3 Unfortunately, the whole area is by factories, which is a big
- 4 It's very because it's close to my children's school and the place where I work. The area is also nice, with a park, children's playground and open spaces.
- 5 It's close to the centre and quite a poor There are good shops but in the evening it can be dangerous. The council say the area will improve, but I expect it to like this for ages.
- 6 For young people it's not that in the evenings, which is a However, it does have a few restaurants, which is good.
- 7 There are one or two drawbacks, but it's a nice place to be.
- 8 For many families, the most aspect of the area is that it has good schools.

7 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.

- 1 Is the area where you live built-up, or is there a feeling of space?
- 2 What is your home surrounded by?
- 3 What shops do you have nearby?
- 4 Is your home handy for most things?
- 5 What are the drawbacks?
- 6 As time goes on, do you think the area will improve or get worse? Why?

A Living in the country

I live **on the outskirts** of a village. There's a **shallow stream** that runs along the bottom of my garden, and **beyond** that, a lovely **meadow**. So, it's a very **quiet spot**. Of course, not everything is perfect. Public transport in the country is very **infrequent**, and in the winter you can **occasionally** feel a bit **isolated**. **Nevertheless**, I wouldn't **swap** rural life for life in a town or city.

GLOSSARY

outskirts	the part of a town furthest from the centre: on the outskirts of a town/city/village
shallow	not having much distance between the top and the bottom OPP deep
stream	a very small river
beyond	on or to the further side of sth
meadow	a field covered in grass, often used for hay
spot	a particular area or place: a quiet spot
infrequent	not happening often OPP frequent; frequency n
occasionally	sometimes but not often
isolated	without much contact with other people isolation n
nevertheless	despite sth you have just mentioned
swap	exchange one thing for another
rural	connected with the country and country life

1 Correct the spelling mistakes.

- | | | | |
|------------|-------|----------------|-------|
| 1 meadow | ..... | 5 occasionally | ..... |
| 2 frequent | ..... | 6 nevertheles | ..... |
| 3 outskirt | ..... | 7 swop | ..... |
| 4 shalow | ..... | 8 streem | ..... |

2 Replace the underlined word(s) with a single word that keeps the same meaning.

- I wouldn't exchange my old cottage for a modern house.
- There's a very small river running through the village.
- The bottom of the garden is a very quiet area.
- We feel we lack contact with other people.
- We do get snow in winter but it's not often.
- I walked through a lovely field covered in grass.
- On the further side of the river there is a church.
- We go there sometimes but not often.
- It's very quiet in the evenings. Despite that, I still like it.
- I used to live on the edge of the village.

3 Complete the sentences.

- You can walk across if you take your shoes off – the stream is very
- There isn't much contact with the neighbours, so they do suffer from
- Rain isn't in the east of the country. The climate is surprisingly dry.
- There isn't much to do in the evening in a village,, I still love it.
- A feeling of peace and calm is one of the joys of life.
- My cousin lives on the of the town, quite close to the countryside
- What about the of the bus service? How often do buses run?
- Just the post office, you can see the bridge on your right.
- We walked across the meadow and found a quiet for our picnic.
- The river is very here, so don't let the children go in.



TEST YOURSELF

B Farming

Martin Dobbs runs a **mixed** animal and **arable** farm. He **keeps** a **herd** of 75 **dairy** cows, which supplies milk and cream to local suppliers in the area, but that is in **combination** with a range of **crops**, including both **cereals** and fruit.



Although farming is becoming an **increasingly** difficult way to **earn a living**, Martin has never considered doing anything other than working in agriculture, which both his father and grandfather did before him. His son and one full-time **labourer** help him. When he dies, he will **pass on** the farm to his son.

SPOTLIGHT *mixed*

Mixed can refer to:

- 1 different types of thing: **mixed farming** (as above)
- 2 good and bad qualities: *I have **mixed feelings** about the farm.*
- 3 consisting of different kinds of people: *People of **mixed race**.*

GLOSSARY

arable	connected with growing crops
keep	own and care for animals: keep cows, sheep, etc.
herd	a group of cows, elephants and deer
dairy	(of a cow) that is kept for the production of milk
combination	the act of joining or mixing together two or more things; two or more things joined/mixed to form a single unit
crop	a plant that is grown in large quantities, especially as food: cereal crop
cereal	one of various types of grass that are produced for food, e.g. <i>wheat</i>
increasingly	more and more
living	money to buy the things you need in life: earn/make a living <i>What do you do for a living?</i>
labourer	a person whose job involves hard physical work labour n
pass sth on (to sb)	give sth to sb else, especially after using it yourself

4 Combine words in the box to form six phrases.

arable	cereal	mixed	physical	earn	herd
labour	crop	a living	feelings	of cows	farm

.....

.....

5 Complete the sentences on the right. Keep the same meaning.

- | | |
|---|-----------------------|
| 1 We are an <u>arable farm</u> . | We mostly |
| 2 We have <u>over 100 cows</u> . | We have a |
| 3 We <u>grow cereals and keep animals</u> . | We are a |
| 4 We <u>grow cereals and vegetables</u> . | We are an |
| 5 We only have <u>milking cows</u> . | We are a |
| 6 <u>How does he earn a living?</u> | What ? |
| 7 My son will get the farm <u>after I die</u> . | I will |
| 8 We grow many <u>types of grass for food</u> . | We grow various |

6 Complete the questions.

- 1 Do most farms in the area grow a of cereals and fruit/vegetables?
- 2 Do they now rely on machines to do the work?
- 3 What kinds of animals do farmers ?
- 4 What kinds of do farmers grow?
- 5 Do many people a living from farming?
- 6 Is it common for farmers to on a farm to their children?
- 7 Is there a shortage of, or is it easy to employ farm
- 8 Do people have feelings about machines replacing human labour?

7 ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY Write answers to the questions in Exercise 6, or talk to another student.

.....

.....

.....

TEST YOURSELF



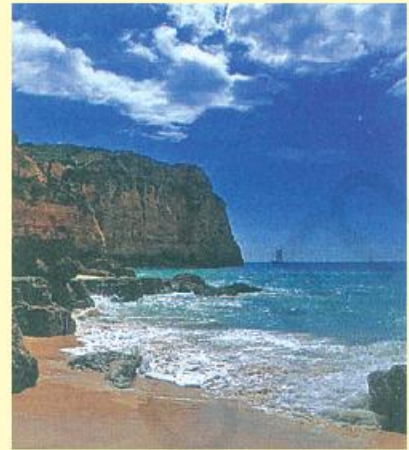
CITY BREAKS IN PRAGUE

Prague is a **stunning** city, and this **thriving** capital of the Czech Republic makes a romantic and **vibrant** city-break destination. A stroll through Prague's streets is a **delight**: its architecture is **remarkably diverse**.

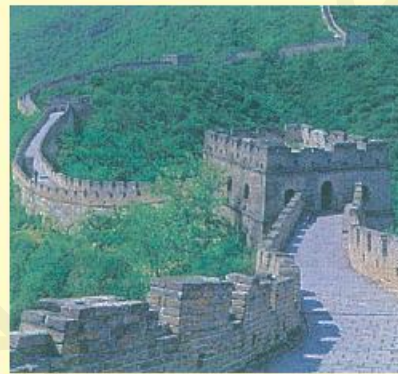
Charles Bridge and the Astronomical Clock have both **undergone restoration**, but the city was amazingly untouched by the Second World War.

UNWIND ON THE ALGARVE

The **resorts** on the Algarve, with their golden sandy beaches, are a great place to relax. **Laze around** on the golden sandy beaches, enjoy the atmosphere of traditional fishing villages like Alvor, or just **wander round** Albufeira's old town, which still **retains** its wonderful **charm**.



OFF THE BEATEN TRACK ON THE GREAT WALL OF CHINA



Our China **trek** offers a **unique** experience for the **adventurous** traveller who wants to **get away from it all**. Apart from the spectacular scenery, you will have the rare opportunity to camp in a **remote** part of rural China and experience local life in its most **unspoilt** state.

GLOSSARY

stunning	extremely attractive or impressive	laze around/about	relax and do very little
thriving	growing and developing, and very successful SYN flourishing	wander around/ round	walk slowly without a real purpose or direction
vibrant	full of life and energy; exciting	retain formal	keep sth
delight	sth that gives sb great pleasure delightful adj	charm	a pleasant or attractive quality or feature charming adj
remarkably	in an unusual or surprising way remarkable adj	off the beaten track	far away from other people and houses SYN remote
diverse	very different from each other, and of various kinds	trek	a long hard walk, often in the mountains being the only one of its kind
undergo	experience a process of change	unique	liking to try new things adventure n
restoration	the work of repairing old buildings, paintings, etc. restore v	adventurous	go somewhere different to have a rest or holiday
unwind inf	relax, especially after working hard SYN take it easy	get away from it all	(of a place) beautiful because it has not been changed or built on
resort	a place which is known as a holiday destination: a beach/ski resort	unspoiled (ALSO unspoilt)	

1 Complete the dialogues.

- 1 Is the town centre quite different now? ~ Yes, it has major changes.
- 2 Is it still a thriving place? ~ Yes, it's
- 3 Is the restaurant quite cheap? ~ Yes, it's good value.
- 4 There's nowhere like Cuenca. ~ That's true. It's
- 5 The village hasn't changed at all. ~ No, it's completely
- 6 I've heard the villa is miles from anywhere. ~ Yes, it's very
- 7 Have you been there before? ~ Yes, it's a very popular beach
- 8 Is it a really enjoyable place? ~ Yes, an absolute

2 Replace the underlined word(s) with a single word that keeps the same meaning.

- 1 He's running a flourishing clothes business.
- 2 Just look at that beautiful view of the mountains.
- 3 My son's interests are very varied.
- 4 That particular building is the only one in existence.
- 5 The villa was really off the beaten track.
- 6 The old town is a surprising and unusual place.
- 7 We just want to relax and do very little.
- 8 The old buildings in the centre need to be repaired.

3 Complete the text.

Great Expectations ...

After a hard time at work, I was looking forward to taking it (1) for a couple of weeks on a Greek island. The villa was by the sea and off the (2) At least, that's what I had understood from the holiday brochure, but the reality was somewhat different. The villa was undergoing (3), so I had to stay in a nearby beach (4), where most people were trying to do the same as me. (5) around on the beach during the day, and then (6) round the streets in the evening. Sadly, the place turned out to be (7) noisy and unpleasant, so my idea of getting (8) all just didn't happen.

4 Replace words in the text with words from the box so that the meaning stays the same.

unwind thriving diverse vibrant stunning restore remarkable wander retain

Lisbon is surrounded by seven hills, and from most of them you have beautiful views of this unusual and surprising city, which has managed to keep so much of its varied architecture and cultural heritage. But it is also a modern, flourishing European capital, and in recent years the city has managed to repair many of the old buildings. For tourists, one of the most popular parts is the *Alfama* where you can casually walk around and enjoy the charms of the old town. The *Chiado* district is famous for shops and restaurants, but for really exciting nightlife, head for the *Bairro Alto*. Then, after all that, you can relax on the nearby beaches of *Cascais* and *Estoril*: wonderful places to visit.

.....

5 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.

- What do you want from a holiday?
- Do you want to go somewhere vibrant and exciting?
- Do you want to laze around on a beach and unwind?
- Do you want to go somewhere off the beaten track and get away from it all?
- Do you want a holiday with adventure?
- Do you like to wander around interesting towns and villages?



A Luxury accommodation

When we go away, the last thing we want is to find that everywhere is **fully-booked**, no **vacancies** anywhere, ending up in a **miserable B and B** (or **Airbnb**), possibly in **the middle of nowhere**. Therefore, we always **book well in advance** and go for something fairly **exclusive**, preferably in a town. It doesn't have to be a **grand** or **impressive** building, but we do expect **luxury** and first-class service in order to **justify** the high prices these places charge. **Having said that**, high prices are no **guarantee** of high quality.



SPOTLIGHT accommodation

A B and B (ALSO B & B – abbreviations of bed and breakfast; ALSO guest house) is like a fairly cheap hotel but it does not serve evening meals.

Airbnb is a private company in which members offer accommodation in a room, flat or house they own. This is all arranged online.

GLOSSARY

fully-booked	(of a hotel, restaurant, theatre, etc.) full; no places available	preferably	used to show which person or thing would be better or preferred
vacancy	a room in a hotel that is available: no vacancies	luxury	beautiful and expensive things luxurious <i>adj</i>
miserable	unpleasant, making you feel unhappy	impressive	causing a feeling of admiration because of its size, quality, importance, etc. SYN grand ; impress <i>v</i>
in the middle of nowhere	far away from other people and houses	justify	give or be a good reason for sth
in advance	before a particular time or event: book well in advance (= book a long time before you go)	having said that	used to introduce an opinion that makes what you have just said seem less strong
exclusive	expensive and reserved for special people	guarantee	a promise that sth will be done or that sth will happen guarantee <i>v</i>

1 Underline the main stress on these words.

justify vacancy luxury in advance miserable guarantee luxurious exclusive preferably fully-booked

2 Good news, bad news, or could it be either? Write G, B or either.

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1 The meal was impressive. | 5 The B&B was in the middle of nowhere. |
| 2 The hotel was fully booked. | 6 The weather was miserable. |
| 3 They gave us a guarantee a taxi would be there. | 7 This area is rather exclusive. |
| 4 There were still vacancies at the hotel. | 8 The room wasn't luxurious. |

3 Complete the dialogues with a suitable word or phrase.

- | | | |
|--|----------------------------------|--|
| 1 Was the breakfast good? | ~ Yes, very good. | , there wasn't a lot of choice. |
| 2 Which floor do you want? | ~ I don't mind, but | overlooking the garden. |
| 3 Have you reserved a room? | ~ Yes, we booked well | |
| 4 Will they refund your money? | ~ Yes, they | that when I rang and cancelled. |
| 5 It's very expensive. | ~ I know, but they | that by the high quality of the rooms. |
| 6 Are there still rooms available? | ~ No, we got the last | , so they're |
|  | ..... | now. |
| 7 Was the building very grand? | ~ Yes, we were | |
| 8 It's a very expensive place, isn't it? | ~ Yes, but I like a bit of | on my holidays. |

4 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or talk to another student.

- 1 Do you book your holidays well in advance?
- 2 Do you often stay in fairly luxurious hotels?
- 3 Do you ever stay in a B&B or use Airbnb?
- 4 Do you like being in the middle of nowhere for your holiday?
- 5 Do you think high prices usually guarantee high quality in your country?
- 6 What do you look for most in holiday accommodation?



TEST YOURSELF

B Budget accommodation

We're not **mean**, but we've generally **opted for** holidays which only require a fairly limited **budget**: occasionally in a **caravan**, but more often we go camping or stay in a **youth hostel**. The thing that **appeals to** me about camping is not just **expense** – it's cheap – but it also **enables us** to move around more freely, and we like that **flexibility**. And **given that** we generally live in **comfort**, I think it's good for the children to experience a type of holiday which is a bit different. When we **go away** we are quite **strict** about them not using their phones.



GLOSSARY

mean	wanting to keep money and not spend it on others OPP generous	enable sb/sth to do sth	make it possible for sb/sth to do sth
opt for sth	choose sth	flexibility	the ability to be changed easily flexible adj OPP inflexible
budget	an amount of money you are able to spend on sth	given (that)	when you consider sth
youth hostel	a cheap and simple place to stay, especially for young people	comfort	the state of having a life with everything you need, or being physically relaxed: live in comfort
appeal (to sb)	be attractive or interesting to sb appealing adj	go away	leave home for a period of time, especially for a holiday
expense	the money that you spend on sth: an extra expense	strict	not allowing people to break rules or behave badly

5 Complete the dialogues with a word or phrase.

- Can you choose when you travel? ~ Yes, there's lot of _____ with dates and times.
- It's a very expensive holiday. ~ Yes, especially _____ that he doesn't earn much.
- My uncle is paying for my holiday. ~ Wow, that's very _____ of him.
- Are you here this weekend? ~ No, we're _____ for a few days.
- Are you hiring a car as well? ~ No, that's an extra _____. We'll take buses.
- We need to stay somewhere really cheap. ~ OK, how about a _____ or a _____?
- Some people love camping but it doesn't _____ to me personally.
- Do you always eat together, even on holiday? ~ Yes, my parents are very _____ about that.

6 Rewrite the sentences using words from the box. Keep the meaning the same.

flexible budget opt for mean enable appealing expense comfort

- He never wants to spend money. _____
- If it's a cheap place, we can stay a bit longer. _____
- We have a limited amount of money to spend. _____
- The date can be changed easily. _____
- We chose something quite simple. _____
- I want to have a pleasant life and everything I need. _____
- A room with a balcony costs more money. _____
- A caravan doesn't interest me. _____

7 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or talk to another student.

- Have you ever stayed in a caravan or youth hostel? If so, what were they like? _____
- Do budget holidays appeal to you, or do you prefer to stay somewhere in comfort? _____
- Do you have a limited budget when you go on holiday? _____
- Do you restrict using your phone (for work) when you're on holiday? _____
- Do you like staying in one place or the flexibility of being able to move around? _____
- Do you remember your parents being strict with you about anything on holiday? _____



A Buying



Hi Matt

Just wanted to let you know we've sold our **terraced**¹ house, and moved in to a larger **semi-detached**² property further out of town. It doesn't look that big from the outside, but the **interior** is really **spacious**: large **entrance hall**, with a wide **staircase**, and **open-plan** kitchen, dining room and living room. The bedrooms are also a good size, which is great. We need to do some **decorating** and probably **put in** a new kitchen, but **basically** the **overall** condition is quite good. The other **bonus** is that it was actually cheaper than our other house, **largely** because of the location, so we don't need such a big **mortgage**. ...

Send

GLOSSARY

interior	the inside part of sth OPP exterior
spacious	having a lot of space; large in size
entrance hall	the area directly inside the front door of a building
staircase	a set of stairs
open-plan	(of the inside of a building) not divided into separate rooms
decorating	the act of putting paint, etc. on a wall or ceiling of a room or house: do (some / a bit of) decorating
put sth in	fix equipment or furniture into position so it can be used SYN install
basically	used to say what the most important or most basic aspect of sth is SYN essentially
overall	generally; when you consider most things
bonus	sth good that you get in addition to what you expect
largely	mostly
mortgage	money you borrow in order to buy a house or flat: take out a mortgage (= organize a mortgage)

- 1 Find an underlined letter in the right-hand box with the same pronunciation as the underlined letter(s) in the left-hand box. Use the **APP** to help you.

spacious
detached

staircase
entrance

mortgage
overall

camera
flat

late
care

saw
damage

.....
.....

- 2 Complete the sentences.

- There are one or two small differences, but the flats are the same.
- We've got a narrow up to the second floor.
- The of the house needs money spent on it, but the is fine.
- The price is to do with location.
- We didn't need a
- There's also a garage at the back. That's a
- There are a few things wrong with it, but it's fine.
- We are going to do some in the bedrooms.
- The living room is really
- We plan to a new shower.

- 3 Complete the questions.

- Are and semi houses common?
- Is it common in flats to have a large entrance
- Do people often prefer an open-..... design?
- Do most people a mortgage to buy a flat or house?
- Do people usually do the themselves, or employ someone to do it for them?
- When people buy a new home, do they often new bathrooms or kitchens?

- 4 ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY Write your answers to Exercise 3, or talk to another student.



TEST YOURSELF

B Renting



I've finally found somewhere to rent. It's been difficult as there aren't many **rental** properties **on the market** at the moment. It's on the top floor of a three-**storey** house – I guess it was originally the **attic** – and I've taken out a one-year **lease**, but the **landlord** is happy for me to **extend** that if I want to. It's **unfurnished**, so I will have to buy a lot of new stuff, but it has recently been redecorated, and there's quite a lot of **storage** space. It's a two-bedroom flat, and I've already got a **flatmate** to share the rent with me, so it's not too expensive. I've just got to sign the **contract** now and pay the **deposit** along with one month's rent. I move in next week.

GLOSSARY

rental	A rental property is a property that you rent rather than buy.	extend	make sth longer or larger, in space or time: extend a building; extend a lease; extension n
on the market	available for sb to buy or rent	unfurnished	without furniture OPP furnished
storey	one floor or level of a building: a multi-storey car park	storage	the process of keeping sth in a particular place until it is needed; space where things can be kept
attic	the space or room under the roof of a house ALSO loft	flatmate	a person who shares a flat with one or more people
lease	a legal agreement that lets you use a building for a fixed period of time in return for rent	contract	a written legal agreement: sign a contract
landlord	a person who rents out a house/flat or room to people for money. A landlord can be a man or a woman; a landlady is a woman only.	deposit	money that you pay when you rent sth and that you get back when you return it without damage

5 Underline the main stress on these words. Use the APP to help you.

rental attic landlord extend unfurnished flatmate contract deposit

6 Underline the correct answer. Both answers may be possible.

- 1 Is the flat a *rent* / *rental* property?
- 2 Who is the *landlord* / *landlady*?
- 3 I'm storing stuff in the *attic* / *loft*.
- 4 I need to find a *flatguy* / *flatmate*.
- 5 There's lots of *storey* / *storage* space.
- 6 It's a six-month *rent* / *lease*.
- 7 I'll move in after I *write* / *sign* the contract.
- 8 I hope I can *intend* / *extend* the lease.

7 Complete the dialogues in a suitable way.

- 1 Are you moving in soon? ~ Yes, I just have to sign the _____ tomorrow.
- 2 Are you living there on your own? ~ No, I've got a couple of _____.
- 3 Is there plenty of space to put things? ~ Yes, there's loads of _____ space.
- 4 Do you have to pay anything before move in? ~ Yeah. You pay a _____ – usually about a month's rent.
- 5 What if you want to stay more than a year? ~ I've already asked about an _____ to the lease.
- 6 Do you need to buy much furniture? ~ No, the flat is fully _____.
- 7 Have you bought the flat? ~ No, it's a _____.
- 8 You're on the first floor? ~ Yes, that's right, but it's a four-_____ building.

8 ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY Write your answers, or talk to another student.

- 1 Is it common to rent flats? _____
- 2 Are they usually furnished or unfurnished? _____
- 3 Is a one-year lease the normal length of a contract? _____
- 4 Are landlords/landladies usually happy to extend a rental contract? _____

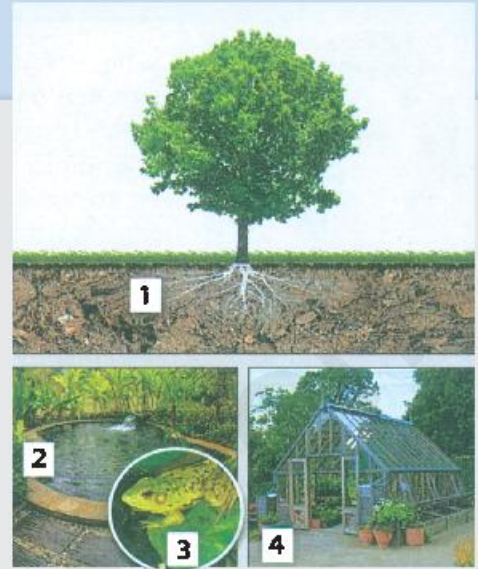


TEST YOURSELF

A A natural garden

I've always wanted a garden that copies the best of **nature**. So, having **acquired** a country cottage with land around it, I'm now creating my own **wildlife** garden. I will need to remove a few old tree **roots**¹ that make planting difficult, but generally the project is going well. A **gentle slope** drops down from the cottage to a **pond**², where I've discovered quite a rare **species of frog**³, which I obviously want to protect.

Near the pond is a **greenhouse**⁴. I will grow tomatoes, but it's largely **intended** for more **tropical** fruits that you can't normally grow in England, such as melon and guava. There's already a variety of **mature** plants in the garden, and a **shed** where I can keep all my tools. Finally, I'm hoping to attract birds to build their **nests** in an old **hollow tree** in the small **wood** I have along one side of the garden.



GLOSSARY

acquire <i>formal</i>	get sth by buying it or being given it
wildlife	animals, birds, and insects that live in a natural state
slope	a piece of land that is higher at one end than the other slope v
species	a group of plants or animals that are all similar and can breed together
intended (for sth)	planned or designed for sth
tropical	coming from or found in very hot parts of the world
mature	fully grown or fully developed
shed	a small simple building, usually built of wood, and often found in gardens
nest	a place where birds lay their eggs and live with their young nest v
hollow	with a hole or empty space inside
wood (ALSO woods)	an area of trees, smaller than a forest

SPOTLIGHT *nature*

We can say someone is interested in **nature** ([U] = the physical world and everything that lives in it). We don't talk about being **in the nature**. We can say:

- I like being **in the countryside** OR looking at **beautiful scenery**.

1 Circle the correct answer(s). Sometimes both answers are possible.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1 The <i>lake / pond</i> is about 30 cm deep. | 5 How did you <i>get / acquire</i> the land? |
| 2 The trees are <i>fully grown / mature</i> . | 6 I'm very interested in <i>nature / the nature</i> . |
| 3 There's a great view of the <i>scenery / nature</i> . | 7 We need to protect <i>wildlife / wildliving</i> . |
| 4 We have a lot of <i>tropic / tropical</i> fruit. | 8 I like being in the <i>scenery / countryside</i> . |

2 Find five pairs of words in the box. Write a sentence to explain the connection each pair has.

frog tools birds wildlife trees nature nest pond shed roots

3 Complete the sentences.

- The _____ is spectacular: beautiful lakes surrounded by mountains.
- For the plants to grow, water has to get down to the _____.
- I often go for a walk in the _____. It's a great place to see birds.
- The garden isn't big, but there may be a chance to _____ more land next to it.
- The lights are _____ for the garden when we sit out on warm summer evenings.
- I read that there are 369,000 _____ of flowering plants in the world.
- From one end of the garden, there is a gentle _____ which goes down to the river.
- I love pineapple, but growing _____ fruit in this country is not easy.
- It gets very hot in the _____, so it's great for growing tomatoes and cucumber.
- The tree was _____, so birds could go in and out very easily.



TEST YOURSELF

B Gardening through the seasons

SPRING: Add **compost** to improve the **soil**.

Cut back any **bushes** that have got too big.

Dig the ground if it's not too **muddy**.

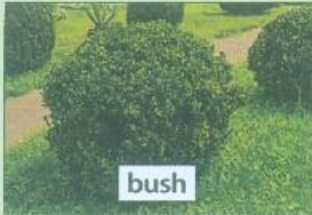
SUMMER: **Mow the lawn** once a week.

Weed the garden, little and often.

Find a nice **bench**, **put your feet up** and enjoy the garden.

AUTUMN: Tidy **hedges** and fallen leaves.

Routine **maintenance**, e.g. clean tools and clean the shed.



bush



digging

spade



lawnmower

lawn

mow

pt mowed pp mowed / mown



bench

1

GLOSSARY

compost	a mixture of decaying plants and food that is added to soil to help things grow. Compost makes soil more fertile .
soil	the top part of the earth in which trees and plants grow
cut sth back	remove some of a plant's stems or branches to improve future growth
muddy	(of the earth) wet from too much rain mud n

weed	remove weeds (wild plants growing where they are not wanted, especially in a formal garden) weeding n: do some weeding
put your feet up	sit down and relax, especially with your feet raised and supported
hedge	a line of bushes growing close together around a garden or field
maintenance	keeping sth in good condition by checking or repairing it regularly maintain v

4 Good news or bad news? Write G or B.

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1 The ground is muddy. | 5 There's loads of digging to do. |
| 2 We've got lots of compost for the garden. | 6 I'll be able to put my feet up. |
| 3 I've just mowed the lawn. | 7 The soil is fertile. |
| 4 The lawn is full of weeds. | 8 The hedges need cutting back. |

5 Replace the underlined words with a word or phrase that keeps the same meaning.

- | | |
|---|------------------------|
| 1 Have you got <u>something I can use for digging</u> ? | Have you got a |
| 2 I'm going to <u>sit down and relax</u> . | I'm going to |
| 3 He's going to <u>cut the grass</u> . | He's going to |
| 4 You'll need to <u>reduce the size of</u> this bush. | You'll need to |
| 5 I'm going to <u>improve the soil</u> . | I'm going to add |
| 6 Where's the <u>machine to cut the grass</u> ? | Where's the |
| 7 There's a <u>line of bushes</u> round the field. | There's a |
| 8 I need to <u>take out the weeds</u> . | I need to do |

6 What do you know about gardening? Answer the questions.

- 1 Why add compost?
- 2 Why is mud a problem?
- 3 Do you need to weed the garden?
- 4 How frequently might you mow the lawn?
- 5 What do you do with plants and bushes that are getting too big?
- 6 What's the purpose of a garden bench?
- 7 Do you ever need to tidy a hedge?
- 8 Give examples of routine maintenance.

TEST YOURSELF

A Downloading an app on your phone

- **Launch** the chosen app store on your device.
- **Scroll down** to **browse** the available apps.
- **Tap** the app you want.
- **Tap** 'get' if it is free, or the price if it is to be paid.
- Select **install** if it is free, or 'buy' when the icon **switches**.
- **Key in** your password or use touch ID when **prompted**.

If you have a problem downloading an app, you may not have enough available **storage** on your device. You can manage your storage in **Settings**.

SPOTLIGHT *launch*

In computing, **launch** means 'start a program'. **Launch** is also used with the meaning 'start an activity' with a range of nouns in other contexts.

- **launch a campaign / an investigation / an appeal / an enquiry / an attack**

GLOSSARY

scroll up/down	move text up or down on the screen so that you can read the different parts
browse	look through different websites without reading everything browsing <i>n</i> A browser is a program that lets you see documents on the internet.
tap (on) sth	hit sth/sb quickly and lightly: tap the icon to open the app
install	put a new program onto a computer or device installation <i>n</i>
icon	a small symbol on a computer or smartphone screen that represents a program or a file
switch	change or make sth change from one thing to another
key sth (in)	put information into a computer using a keyboard
prompt	encourage or tell sb to do sth on a computer
storage	the process of keeping information on a computer and the way that it is kept
settings <i>pl</i>	the place on a computer or device where you can choose the way it looks or works

1 Correct the errors.

- | | | | |
|-------------------------------|-------|--|-------|
| 1 stroll up a document | ..... | 5 instal the program | ..... |
| 2 tap the ikon | ..... | 6 The computer will prompt you to act. | ..... |
| 3 lanch the programme | ..... | 7 Go to setting to change sounds. | ..... |
| 4 brouse the website for help | ..... | 8 How much data storige have you got? | ..... |

2 Cover the glossary. Which words are being defined?

- | | |
|---|-------|
| 1 put information into a device using a keyboard | ..... |
| 2 touch something, e.g. an icon, quickly | ..... |
| 3 change from one thing to another | ..... |
| 4 start a program, an app, etc. | ..... |
| 5 a program that lets you read documents on the internet | ..... |
| 6 the process of keeping information and the way it is kept | ..... |
| 7 move text on a screen up so that you can read it | ..... |

3 Complete the dialogues.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1 Did you manage to put the program on your computer? | ~ Yes, I it successfully. |
| 2 Where did you find out about that new restaurant app? | ~ I was just on a food website. |
| 3 How will I know what to do next? | ~ The program will you to continue or cancel. |
| 4 How do I open the app? | ~ You just the icon on the screen. |
| 5 Where are the answers to the quiz questions? | ~ They're at the bottom of the document. Just down a bit. |
| 6 How do I check the battery on my phone? | ~ Go into and click on 'battery'. |
| 7 What are the police doing about computer crime? | ~ They've various investigations. |
| 8 How do I send a message? | ~ Tap on this |



TEST YOURSELF

B Routine maintenance

1. Don't leave your device charging all the time. When fully charged, **unplug** the power **cable**.
2. Use an **antivirus** program, and keep it **updated**.
3. Remember to do regular **backups** of your data. If you use your computer a lot, **back** your work **up** every day.
4. Don't turn the computer off every time it **freezes**. Wait a while before you decide whether or not to **reboot**.
5. Clean your computer screen by **wiping downwards** with a **damp** cloth. Don't let any water drops get into the computer: they could **ruin** the **internal components**.

GLOSSARY

unplug	remove the plug of a piece of electrical equipment from the power supply OPP plug (sth) in
cable	a set of wires covered in plastic or rubber that carries electricity, etc.
antivirus	designed to find and destroy computer viruses
update	make sth more modern by adding new parts or information update n
backup	a copy of the information on your computer that you keep in case you lose the information back sth up
freeze	When your computer freezes , you cannot move any images because of a system problem.
reboot	switch off a computer then start it again immediately
wipe	remove dirt, liquid, etc. from sth using a cloth or your hand
downwards	towards the ground or towards a lower level OPP upwards
damp	a little bit wet
ruin	damage sth so badly that it loses its value, pleasure, etc.
internal	connected with the inside of sth OPP external
component	one of several parts of which sth is made

4 Is the pronunciation of the underlined letters the same or different? Write S or D. Use the APP to help you.

- | | | |
|------------------------------------|------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| 1 ruin <u>ai</u> n antivirus | 3 <u>u</u> pwards plug in | 5 <u>a</u> mp external |
| 2 antivirus <u>ai</u> pe | 4 <u>a</u> ble <u>u</u> date | 6 <u>u</u> pnwards antivirus |

5 Answer the questions.

- 1 If you **ruin** something, can you still use it?
- 2 If you **reboot** your computer, do you turn it on or off?
- 3 When you **wipe** something, are you cleaning it?
- 4 Does a computer have one **component** or many?
- 5 Is a computer mouse an **internal** or **external** component?
- 6 If you don't have a **backup** of your data, is that sensible?
- 7 Does a **cable** connect something to a power supply?

6 Complete the questions with a suitable word.

- 1 Does your computer screen often ?
- 2 Have you got software to protect the data on your device?
- 3 How do you clean your screen? With a cloth or some other way?
- 4 And do you wipe the screen upwards or ?
- 5 How often do you your software?
- 6 What time of day do you usually in your phone to charge it?
- 7 Do you your data once a day/week/month or never?
- 8 If you use a desktop computer, do you ever it after you've shut down?

7 ABOUT YOU Write your answers to the questions in Exercise 6, or tell a partner.

.....

.....

.....



TEST YOURSELF

A The championship

THE PREMIER LEAGUE

As the championship **reaches** its **climax**, Manchester City and Liverpool are still challenging for the **title**. Man City's next **opponents** are Fulham, **at home**, which looks to be a **relatively** easy game. Liverpool, however, face much **tougher opposition**, **away at Arsenal**. The manager is not **underestimating** the difficulty of the task. 'Arsenal are a quality side and still **contenders** for a place in the top four, so our **priority** is just that one game, and not to think about the championship title.'

GLOSSARY

league	a group of sports clubs that compete with each other for a prize
climax	the most important and exciting part of a book, film, game, etc.: reach a climax
title	the position of being the winner in a competition, especially in sport: <i>She has three world titles in cycling.</i>
opponent	(in sports or competitions) a person/team who plays against sb
at home	If a team plays at home , they play in their own stadium. OPP away (at Arsenal, etc.); home adj , away adj : an away/home game
relatively	to quite a large degree, especially when compared with others
tough	difficult
(the) opposition	the person or team you compete against in sport
underestimate	think that sb/sth is not as strong, good, etc. as they really are OPP overestimate
contender	a person or team with a chance of winning a competition
priority	sth that is more important or you must do before anything else: a top priority

1 Underline the main stress on these words. Use the **APP** to help you.

climax underestimate opponent contender
relatively priority opposition overestimate

2 Answer the questions.

- If something is **relatively** easy, is it quite easy or extremely easy?
- If it's a **tough** game, is it a very physical game, or a difficult game?
- Is the **opposition**, a team you are playing against or a team you don't like?
- In a competition, is a **contender** the team who is going to win it?
- If something is a **priority**, is it quite important or very important?
- If you've observed the opposition carefully, are you likely to **underestimate** them, **overestimate** them, or judge them well?
- Does a **climax** come at the beginning or the end?
- Does a **league** involve one team or many teams?

3 Complete the sentences.

- Our in the next game are a team that have won two championships, so it will be a very match.
- After his injury, Brown's top now is to get back to full fitness.
- There are no weak teams in the League, so you should never the opposition.
- There are 20 teams in the Premier
- Last week's game was easy, but the next match will be much tougher.
- Inter Milan are playing well, so they will be again for the championship.
- We are at this week to Spurs, and at Liverpool the following week.
- With just one round of games to go, the championship is now a climax.
- Chelsea have now won three premierships in recent years.

B What do football supporters think?

CHELSEA

We lack a bit of **consistency** and the manager is **under pressure**. However, I still think we have a **real chance** of being in the top four and **qualifying** for The Champions League.

MANCHESTER UNITED

The new manager has **transformed** our season, and getting players back from injury has been a real **boost**. We had **no chance** of qualifying for Europe at Christmas, but now it's a possibility.

SPURS

We have a habit of **dominating** the opposition, then we **throw it away** at the end. Last week's **defeat** was a bad one, but I still think we **stand a chance of getting** into the top four.

ARSENAL

We've **sorted out** one or two problems off the **pitch**, but after three defeats **in a row**, there may only be an **outside chance** of making the top four.

GLOSSARY

consistency	the quality of always behaving in the same way or having the same standard, etc. consistent <i>adj</i> OPP inconsistent	dominate	be more powerful, important or noticeable than others domination <i>n</i> ; dominant <i>adj</i>
under pressure	in an anxious situation, often because sb is forcing you to do sth in a certain way	throw sth away	waste or not use an opportunity
qualify (for sth)	win the right to enter a competition or continue to the next stage of it qualification <i>n</i>	defeat	an occasion when sb fails to win or be successful against sb else OPP victory
transform	change sth completely, usually in a positive way transformation <i>n</i>	sort sth out	find a solution to a problem
boost	sth that helps or encourages sb/sth	pitch	an area of ground where you play certain sports; a football/rugby pitch
		in a row	one after another, without a break

SPOTLIGHT *chance*

Chance is used in many phrases.

- There's **no chance** that we will reach Sydney before night.
- We've only got an **outside chance of promotion** to the Premier League. (= a very small chance) **OPP a real/good chance**
- Do you think we **stand a chance of winning**? (= have a possibility of winning)
- This season could be my **big chance**. (= opportunity for success) He's retiring soon, so this is his **last chance** to lead the team. (= final opportunity)

4 Complete the sentences.

- 1 The noun from qualify is
- 2 The opposite of defeat is
- 3 The opposite of consistent is
- 4 The noun from dominate is
- 5 The noun from transform is
- 6 The noun from consistent is

5 Positive or negative? Write P or N.

- 1 It's been a real boost.
- 2 We've sorted it out.
- 3 Another defeat.
- 4 He transformed the team.
- 5 We're inconsistent.
- 6 Three victories in a row.
- 7 I threw it away.
- 8 I've been under pressure.
- 9 We've got a real chance.
- 10 We were dominant.

6 Complete the sentences.

- 1 Next season could be my last of winning the championship.
- 2 The is in bad condition because of the heavy rain.
- 3 If we win the next two games, it will be a for the players and supporters.
- 4 One more victory and it will be three wins in a
- 5 We just away games that we really should win easily.
- 6 One week we play well, the next we're rubbish; we lack
- 7 If we win on Saturday, we will for the next round in the competition.
- 8 I know the team is under, but they have to out their problems.
- 9 Unfortunately, in our last four games, we've had one victory and three
- 10 I don't think we a of winning the title.

7 ABOUT YOU Do you support a team? If so, how have they been playing recently? Write sentences using vocabulary from above, or tell a partner.



Will a song stand the test of time?

What is it about a pop song that makes it **compelling** not only as a **hit single** when it's released, but for future generations as well? Take, for example, *Bohemian Rhapsody* by Queen. Is it the interesting **lyrics**, the **melodies** or the fascinating changes of **rhythm** that make it so popular? Much less **complicated**, on the **surface** at least, but no less successful is: *All You Need is Love* by the Beatles. The **sentiment** in its **catchy chorus** couldn't be simpler, and it is such an **easy** song to **sing along to**. Or is it the personality and quality of the singer or the band that **determine** whether the song will **engage** the listener or not? David Bowie's music is certainly **memorable** for those reasons; the colourful characters he created, such as Ziggy Stardust, only add to that.

Are great songs ones that you recognize as great the first time you **encounter** them, or are there some that you need to listen to several times before they have an effect? *Eleanor Rigby* by The Beatles is perhaps an example of one which you need to listen to carefully because of its complex lyrics (e.g. 'wearing the face that she keeps in a jar by the door'), but also because it was such an original and different type of pop song at the time.

But whatever **criteria** you use to measure the greatness of a pop song (or any **genre** of music), one thing seems true for all of them: they have the ability to stand the test of time because people can **relate to** them and still see them as **relevant** decades after they were first written.



GLOSSARY

stand the test of time	If sth stands the test of time , it is remembered positively for a long time, or functions successfully for a long time.	catchy	(of a tune or the words of a song) easy to remember
compelling	that makes you pay attention to it because it is so interesting and exciting	chorus	the part of a song that is repeated
hit	a popular and successful song, often called a hit single	sing along (to sth)	sing a song at the same time as listening to it
lyrics	the words of a song	determine	discover the facts about sth or calculate sth exactly SYN establish; determination n
melody	a tune, especially the main tune in a piece of music written for several instruments or voices SYN tune	engage formal	succeed in attracting and keeping sb's attention and interest
rhythm	a regular repeated pattern of sounds or movements	memorable	worth remembering or easy to remember SYN unforgettable
complicated	difficult to understand SYN complex; complicate v	encounter formal	meet sb unexpectedly encounter n
surface	the outer appearance of a person, thing or situation; the qualities you see or notice that are not hidden	criteria pl (sing criterion)	the standards that you use when you make a decision or form an opinion about sb/sth
sentiment	a feeling or an opinion, especially one based on emotions	genre formal	a particular type or style of literature, art, film or music
		relate to sth relevant	feel able to understand sth important and useful OPP irrelevant; relevance n

1 Is the pronunciation of the underlined letters the same or different? Write S or D. Use the APP to help you.

- | | | | |
|-----------------------------------|-------|---------------------------------------|-------|
| 1 <u>catchy</u> chorus | ..... | 6 <u>rhythm</u> lyrics | ..... |
| 2 relate <u>engage</u> | ..... | 7 <u>genre</u> engage | ..... |
| 3 memor <u>able</u> relevant | ..... | 8 criteria <u>single</u> | ..... |
| 4 relate <u>surface</u> | ..... | 9 <u>genre</u> <u>engage</u> | ..... |
| 5 <u>compelling</u> <u>melody</u> | ..... | 10 <u>sentiment</u> memor <u>able</u> | ..... |

2 Circle the words in the box which we usually associate with music.

rhythm	compelling	tune	encounter	catchy	sing along
melody	chorus	criteria	hit single	lyrics	genre

3 Answer the questions.

- 1 What's the noun formed from *determine*?
- 2 What's a synonym for *complicated*?
- 3 What's the opposite of *relevant*?
- 4 What's the singular form of *criteria*?
- 5 What is the related noun for the verb *encounter*?
- 6 What's a synonym for *memorable*?

4 Replace the underlined words with a word or phrase that keeps the same meaning.

- 1 The song is very easy to remember.
- 2 He played a series of musical notes on the piano.
- 3 *One Direction* had a number of very successful songs in the 2010s.
- 4 I really like the bit of the song that gets repeated.
- 5 The words of the song are interesting.
- 6 This type of music is difficult to understand.
- 7 The band thinks it's important that young people are able to feel and understand the music.
- 8 I just love that regular repeated pattern of sound.

5 Complete the sentences.

- 1 Websites often choose the 'best' pop songs, but what are the for selection?
- 2 I like the song because of the lyrics and the catchy
- 3 Marie likes pop, but classical is still her favourite music
- 4 I first Hungarian folk music on a visit to Budapest five years ago.
- 5 Many protest songs were written about the Vietnam war, but they still seem just as today, and many young people can still to them.
- 6 Great performers have a natural ability to their audiences.
- 7 The most concert I've ever been to was in Edinburgh last year. It was amazing!
- 8 Many young people seem to see the of music to their lives more than art or literature.
- 9 Music journalists often try to what makes a great singer. Is it the qualities in their voice or their ability to convey a range of emotions?
- 10 On the, a song may seem quite positive, but when you listen to the lyrics a few more times, it can sometimes reveal a deeper and more pessimistic meaning.

6 ABOUT YOU Write answers to the questions, or talk to another student.

- 1 Do you agree with the text about the features of a great song?
- 2 Is there anything else you think is important in a great pop song?
- 3 What attracts you the most? Is it: the melody? the rhythm? the lyrics?
- 4 Do you often sing along to pop songs in English?
- 5 Is the sentiment expressed in a song important? Why?
- 6 Can you think of several more pop songs that have stood the test of time?



A A fabulous play

★★★★★

The Woman in Black is a **fabulous ghost story**. With just a minimal set and few **sound effects**, this drama will **scare you to death!**

★★★★★

A **superb adaptation** of Susan Hill's **classic** novel. The **tension** is maintained throughout the production, and the **cast** of two are **sensational!** The **applause** went on and on.

★★★★★

The critics have been **unanimous** in their **praise**. A must-see thriller!



GLOSSARY

fabulous	extremely good, excellent SYN sensational, superb	classic	(of a book, play, etc.) one of the best and most important, and having lasting value
ghost story	a story about the spirit of a dead person that sb hears or sees	tension	a feeling of anxiety or stress because you are nervous tense adj
set	the scenery and furniture used in a play, film, etc.	cast (+ sing OR pl verb)	all the people who act in a play or film
sound effects	sounds that are made artificially in a play, film, etc. to make it more realistic, e.g. wind, thunder	applause	the sound of an audience showing approval by hitting their hands together applaud v SYN clapping; clap v
scare sb to death	make sb very frightened Scared stiff means very scared.	unanimous	agreed by everyone
adaptation	a book or play that has been made into a film, TV programme, etc.	praise	words that show approval of or admiration for sb/sth praise v

1 Put the words in the correct column below based on the pronunciation of the underlined letters.

Use the **APP** to help you.

fabulous sensational scare adapt classic
 cast apaplause auadiance unananimaus praise

ACTOR

PLAY

FAR

HAIR

CAUGHT

THEATRE

.....

2 Circle the correct word. Both answers may be possible.

- 1 I didn't like the acting, but I thought the set / cast was good.
- 2 The play was frightening. It scared me to die / death.
- 3 There were great sound affects / effects.
- 4 I thought the play was absolutely superb / sensational.
- 5 The book is a classic / classical.
- 6 The play is an adaption / adaptation from a book.
- 7 Are you keen on ghost / spirit stories?
- 8 Did they applause / applaud at the end?
- 9 These scary stories can create a lot of praise / tension.

3 Complete the dialogues.

- 1 Were you frightened? ~ Yes, I was scared
- 2 Is it based on an original story? ~ No, it's an of a novel.
- 3 Was the acting good? ~ Yes, the whole was excellent.
- 4 Did everyone agree? ~ Yes, the decision was
- 5 Have people liked the play? ~ Yes, it's had from almost everyone
- 6 The audience just kept clapping. ~ I know. The was incredible.
- 7 Will we still be reading it in 50 years? ~ Definitely. It's a
- 8 Were people nervous? ~ Yes, I felt a bit

TEST YOURSELF

B A disappointing film

- A I went to see the latest **blockbuster** at the local cinema last night. I wasn't **convinced** by it.
- B Me neither. I had quite **high expectations** because the critics seem to like it, but I thought the action **sequences** were **somewhat predictable**, and it just lacked any **originality**.
- A Yes, they were **poor**. I think the worst **aspect**, though, was the **screenplay**, which was not **convincing** at all. And I couldn't hear some of it either - **subtitles** might've helped.

SPOTLIGHT *subtitles and dubbing*

Subtitles translate what is said in a film into a different language; they appear at the bottom of the screen. They are also used to help deaf people. If a film is **dubbed**, the spoken words of the film are replaced by words in another language.

GLOSSARY

blockbuster <i>inf</i>	a very popular and successful film or book
convinced	completely sure about things convincing making sb believe that sth is true
expectation	a hope that sth good will happen: have high/low expectations (of sth); live up to expectations; exceed expectations
sequence	a set of events, actions, etc. which have a particular order and lead to a particular result to some degree SYN rather
somewhat predictable	If sth is predictable , we know in advance that it will happen or what it will be like. OPP unpredictable
originality	the quality of being new and interesting and not seen before
poor aspect	not good; lower in quality than was expected a particular part or feature of sth
screenplay	the words that are written for a film and how they are to be acted

4 Underline the stress on these words. Use the APP to help you.

aspect	expectation	somewhat
blockbuster	screenplay	subtitles
convinced	sequence	unpredictable

5 Yes or No?

- If a film is predictable, do you know what will happen?
- If a film is somewhat long, is it very long?
- Does a sequence always involve more than one?
- If the plot of a film is convincing, is that positive?
- If something exceeds your expectations, is it what you expected?
- Can you go to a screenplay?

6 Complete the sentences.

- I knew what was going to happen at the end. ~ Yes, it was very
- My sister thought the ending was good, but I didn't think it was very
- Did the film live up to your ?
- There's a great action in the film involving a car chase.
- The film was OK, but overall I came away feeling disappointed.
- The actors were good, but they were helped by a fabulous
- Some people don't like foreign films with subtitles and prefer it when they are
- In the summer they often show these big at the cinema, largely for kids.

7 Complete the responses, agreeing with the first speaker but without repeating the underlined words.

- | | |
|---|--------------------------------------|
| 1 The screenplay <u>wasn't good</u> , was it? | ~ No, it was |
| 2 Was it <u>better than you thought it would be</u> ? | ~ Yes, it |
| 3 I wasn't <u>completely sure about the story</u> . | ~ No, I wasn't |
| 4 I didn't like that <u>particular feature</u> of the film. | ~ No, I didn't like that |
| 5 Is the film <u>in the original language</u> ? | ~ Yes, but it has |
| 6 I didn't know <u>what was going to happen</u> . | ~ I agree, the ending was very |
| 7 The film needed <u>some new and interesting ideas</u> . | ~ Yeah, there was no |
| 8 I thought the plot was <u>rather</u> confusing. | ~ I agree. I found it |

TEST YOURSELF

A Organizing a party

- The **host** is expected to do most of the **preparation**, such as providing food and drink. This can be expensive and **time-consuming**, so consider asking others to **make a contribution** and bring something.
- You don't want the **prospect** of too much to **clear up**, so consider **disposable** plates and cutlery, which can be recycled after use.
- Don't advertise it on the internet **beforehand**. You don't want **gatecrashers**.
- Parties take a while to **get going**. Music or party games will **liven things up**.
- Finally, don't **get carried away**. You're planning a party, not a theme park.

GLOSSARY

host	a person who invites guests to a meal, a party, etc. Hostess can be used for a woman.
preparation	the act or process of getting ready for sth or making sth ready
time-consuming contribution	needing a lot of time: a time-consuming process sth that you give or do to help sth be successful: make a contribution (to sth) ; contribute v
prospect	the possibility that sth will happen
clear (sth) up	make sth clean and neat, often by putting things back where they belong
disposable	made to be thrown away after single use
beforehand	before sth else happens or is done
gatecrasher	sb who tries to get into a party without an invitation
get going	(of a party or event) start to become enjoyable
liven (sth) up	become or make sth more exciting
get carried away	become too excited or lose control of your feelings

1 Underline the stress on these words. Use the APP to help you.

time-consuming contribution beforehand get going
contribute disposable gatecrasher liven up

2 Complete the dialogues with a suitable word.

- 1 Whose party is it? ~ Paula and Stefano are the
- 2 Can we throw these plates away? ~ Yes, they're
- 3 Can we spend what we like on the party? ~ Yes, but don't get carried
- 4 Did this take long? ~ Yes, it was very
- 5 Why didn't you tell me Will was going to be there? ~ I didn't know
- 6 Why did you turn up the music? ~ To things up a bit.
- 7 Did people help out at the party with the food? ~ Yes, everyone made a
- 8 I wouldn't like the of organizing a wedding ~ Oh, it's ok as long as there are other people to help.

3 Complete the words in the text.

... and the party was great! There was lots of food, but I think Lia did most of the (1)
(2), so she still had time to enjoy herself. And most of the guests (3)
something, either by bringing a bottle of something, or some food. She also put a couple of big guys near
the door to stop (4), which was sensible. It was quiet to start with, but it soon got
(5), and when the disco started, things really (6), I imagine there was a lot
to (7) the next day, but I hope Lia thought it was worth it.

Send

4 ABOUT YOU What do you think of the advice in the text? Is there anything that would be unusual or unacceptable in your country? Write your answers, or ask another student.

.....

.....

.....



TEST YOURSELF

B In other people's company

Shall we **pop round** and see Gina?

Yes, she may **fancy** a bit of **company**.

It's been lovely, Ela, but we'd **better be off**.

Is Aaron a bit **awkward** in **company**?

Mm. I don't think he enjoys **socializing**.

That's ok. It was really **good of you** to come.

You always get a **warm welcome** at Laura's.

Yes, we **have a good laugh** whenever we go there.

SPOTLIGHT *company* [U]

- I **enjoy company**. (= being with other people)
- She's **good company**. (= enjoyable to be with)
- They enjoy **their own company**. (= being by themselves)
- He's not very **good in company**. (= with other people)
- I'll **accompany you**. (formal = go with you)

GLOSSARY

pop round/over/in inf	make a short visit to a person or place SYN call round, call on sb	be off	leave a place: I must be off. / I'd better be off.
fancy sth / doing sth inf	want sth or want to do sth	good of sb (to do sth)	willing to help; showing kindness to other people
awkward	embarrassed or not relaxed with other people	warm welcome	If sb gives you a warm welcome or welcomes you with open arms , you feel relaxed in their home: welcome v, adj: make sb feel welcome
socialize (with sb)	meet and spend time with people in a friendly way	have a (good) laugh	enjoy the occasion SYN have a good/great time
you, etc. had better do sth	you should do sth		

5 Rewrite the sentences without using the underlined words. Keep the same meaning.

- 1 She's not very good with other people. She's not very good
- 2 What would you like to do? What do ?
- 3 We always enjoy the occasion. We always have
- 4 I think I should leave now. I think I'd
- 5 He's very uncomfortable with people. He's very
- 6 She made me feel relaxed in her home. She gave me a very
- 7 I think he likes being by himself. I think he likes his
- 8 Someone will go with you. Someone will
- 9 Did you feel relaxed at her place? Did she make you ?
- 10 We'll make a short visit a bit later. ~ We'll a bit later.

6 Complete the dialogues with a suitable word or phrase.

- 1 She is always nice to be with. ~ Yes, she is. She's very
- 2 Where have you been? ~ We just round to see Charlotte.
- 3 Was your dad there? ~ Of course. He was at the door to us.
- 4 He doesn't like being with people much, does he? ~ No, he prefers his
- 5 Max stays in a lot these days. ~ I know. He doesn't as much as he used to.
- 6 Did Miles move your stuff? ~ Yes, it was very to help.
- 7 Do you prefer being on your own? ~ Not at all. I enjoy, you know that.
- 8 Were the locals friendly when you moved in? ~ Oh yes, they welcomed us with
- 9 Do you want to round tonight on your way home? ~ Yes, that would be great.
- 10 We must now, but it was great seeing you. ~ You too. Have a good trip.

TEST YOURSELF

45 Describing change

A Types of change

Example	Meaning
<i>I find it difficult to adapt to so much new technology.</i>	change your behaviour because the situation has changed SYN adjust (to sth)
<i>We've altered our plans: we're now arriving at 6.00, not 7.00.</i>	make sth different but without changing it completely alteration n
<i>Civil servants are now amending the document.</i>	change sth slightly, usually to correct a mistake in a statement, document, etc. amendment n
<i>Democracy has evolved over hundreds of years.</i>	change gradually, often from sth simple to sth more complicated evolution n
<i>There are new proposals to reform the prison system.</i>	change a law, system, organization, etc. to make it better reform n
<i>Some people want to restore the monarchy in certain countries.</i>	return sth to its former state or condition, e.g. a building, a painting restoration n
<i>They were going to let him go, but they reversed their decision.</i>	change sth so it is the opposite of what it was before: reverse a decision/policy; reversal n
<i>Computers have transformed our lives.</i>	completely change the appearance or character of sth, often to make it better transformation n
<i>It's a big transition from school to full-time work.</i>	a period of change from one state or condition to another: in transition

1 Write the nouns related to these verbs.

- | | | |
|-----------------|-------------------|----------------|
| 1 restore | 3 transform | 5 evolve |
| 2 amend | 4 reverse | |

2 Organize these words into the categories below.

evolve restore amend adapt alter reform reverse transform adjust

- a verb that describes complete change:
- two verbs that describe changing something back:
- a verb that describes gradual change:
- two verbs that describe a change to improve something:
- two verbs that involve a change in behaviour:
- a verb that describes changing only a part of something:

3 Complete the sentences with a suitable word.

- The new furniture has completely their living room.
- Part of the 18th century tower was damaged, but they are planning to it.
- As a company we believe in, not revolution.
- They've changed their minds completely: this is a of the previous policy.
- Solicitors want to some of our outdated divorce laws.
- I've lost so much weight that I'll need to some of my clothes.
- Now he has children, he will have to to a very different lifestyle.
- I had to one of the documents as there were several errors in it.
- We've had to make one or two to the timetable because of the extra course.
- He will remain in charge during the period of



B Change management

Managing change

Most employees **resist** change that is **enforced** and **imposed upon** them. So, if a company wants to **pursue** a policy that aims to **bring about sweeping**, or even **subtle** changes, managers need to remember that their role is to **facilitate** change and not impose it. This requires an **ongoing consultation** process with the staff, so that any changes have their support before they are **implemented**.

GLOSSARY

resist	refuse to accept sth and try to stop it happening resistance <i>n</i>
enforce	make people obey sth; enforce the law ; enforcement <i>n</i>
impose sth (on/upon sb)	make sb accept sth against their wishes
pursue	follow or try to achieve sth over a period of time: pursue a policy/goal
bring sth about	make sth happen
subtle	not easy to notice or understand: a subtle difference ; OPP obvious
facilitate	make an act or process easier to achieve
ongoing	continuing to develop: an ongoing process/investigation
consultation	the act of discussing sth with sb before making a decision consult sb <i>v</i> ; consultative <i>adj</i> : a consultative process/committee
implement	make sth that has been decided start to happen SYN put sth into practice ; implementation <i>n</i>

SPOTLIGHT **adjective + change**

A number of adjectives are commonly used with the noun **change**.

- **sweeping/radical/major/wholesale** changes (= big changes)
- **a refreshing/welcome** change (= pleasantly new or different)

4 Good or bad management, according to the text? Write G or B.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1 They've enforced the change. | 4 They've imposed change. |
| 2 They've resisted any change. | 5 They've introduced refreshing changes. |
| 3 There has been a consultative process. | 6 They want to facilitate change. |

5 Replace the underlined words with different words that keep the same meaning.

- It's only a small difference but we believe it will have an effect.
- He wants to introduce radical changes.
- The new furniture is a welcome change.
- They have the power to make people obey the law.
- They plan to implement a number of changes.
- The new measures will create further changes.
- Staff have refused to accept any changes.
- Suggesting change is one thing but putting it into practice is more difficult.
- I believe there is a continuing investigation into the disappearance of the funds.
- She has tried to make discussions easier between staff and management.

6 Complete the text.

When the new headteacher arrived, it was rumoured that she planned to (1) a policy of (2) changes to the way the school was organized, and that she wouldn't be very sympathetic to staff who showed any real (3) However, unlike the former head who tried to (4) change without discussing it with anyone first, Mrs Palmer has (5) members of staff, and that has been a (6) change. She set up a staff committee, and we have been involved in an (7) process of (8) for about two months. And we have already (9) a few changes, which have made an (10) difference.



46 Energy conservation

Easy ways to **conserve** energy in the home

- **Switch to energy-saving eco light bulbs.** They are better for the environment and they last much longer. They are more expensive to buy, but they greatly reduce your energy consumption and in the long run are a significant financial saving.
- Never leave electrical **appliances on standby**, or leave your mobile phone **charging**¹ unnecessarily. Get rid of your **tumble dryer**: it consumes masses of energy.
- Every year we throw away thousands of batteries. If these are not **disposed of** safely **landfill** sites will become even more toxic. Use **rechargeable batteries**² or, **better still**, solar chargers.
- With a 'smart' meter, you can **monitor** the amount of energy you use, and even control your consumption when you are away from home.
- If you are not planning to move in the near future, **solar panels**³ are a good **long-term investment**. You will make a saving on your electricity bills as well as receiving money for the electricity you generate and sell back to National Grid*.

* The National Grid is the network in the United Kingdom connecting power stations and ensuring that electricity generated anywhere can be used to satisfy demand anywhere.



GLOSSARY

conserve	avoid wasting sth conservation <i>n</i>	charge sth (up)	pass electricity through sth to store it there charger ² <i>n</i>
switch (to sth)	change or make sth change from using one thing to using another	tumble dryer	a machine that uses hot air to dry clothes
-saving	not wasting anything: energy-saving , a labour-saving device	dispose of sth	get rid of sth that you do not want or cannot keep disposal <i>n</i>
eco-	(short for ecology/ecological) relating to the environment: an eco-disaster	landfill (site)	an area of land where large amounts of rubbish are buried
consumption	the act of using energy, food or materials. A person is a consumer . consume <i>v</i>	toxic	poisonous: toxic chemicals/gases/substances
saving	an amount of sth, such as money or time, that you do not need to spend or use	better still	even better. Still is used here and with other comparative adjectives to make a comparison stronger: longer still
appliance	a machine you use at home, e.g. a fridge, a washing machine	monitor	watch and check sth over a period of time to see how it develops or changes
on standby	If a TV is on standby , it is connected to the power supply but is not in use.	investment	a thing that is worth buying because it will be useful and helpful
		generate	produce or create sth: generate electricity

SPOTLIGHT *in the short/medium/long term*

These expressions are used to describe what will happen a short, medium or long time in the future.

- *The reforms won't happen **in the short term**.*
 - *We plan to move **in the long term** (SYN **in the long run**).*
- Short-/medium-/long-term** can also be used as adjectives.
- *Hiring unqualified staff is only a **short-term** solution.*

1 Mark the stress on these words and phrases. Use the APP to help you.

- | | | |
|--------------|-----------------|--------------|
| appliance | disposal | on standby |
| better still | energy-saving | tumble dryer |
| conserve | in the long run | conservation |

2 Good or bad, in terms of energy-saving? Write G or B.

- 1 I left the TV on standby overnight.
- 2 We don't use eco-light bulbs.
- 3 I switched to rechargeable batteries.
- 4 Our energy consumption didn't increase over the winter.
- 5 The machine gives out toxic substances.
- 6 The company has introduced energy conservation measures.
- 7 He left the phone charger on all day.
- 8 We've reduced what we send to the landfill.
- 9 I've removed the water-saving device from our taps.
- 10 We have fitted solar panels.

3 Complete the phrases in these sentences.

- 1 We spend too much time just looking at solutions.
- 2 I think dishwashers are one of the best devices.
- 3 We've just had 12 fitted on the roof.
- 4 I'm afraid I often leave the TV
- 5 I've got a washing machine, but there isn't room for a dryer.
- 6 The oil spill off the coast was an
- 7 Wind turbines will provide us with a lot of our energy needs in the
- 8 A lot of rubbish still gets buried in
- 9 it's more eco-friendly and economical to use rechargeable
- 10 I have decided to to a different energy supplier.
- 11 We need to get rid of any chemicals.
- 12 Where can we of these batteries in the most ecological way?

4 Complete the questions.

- 1 Have you got a tumble? if so, could you manage without it?
- 2 When you your mobile phone, do you leave it plugged in overnight?
- 3 Do you the amount of electricity you use every day/week?
- 4 Do you know how much electricity you in an average week?
- 5 How many electrical in your kitchen do you use regularly?
- 6 Do you always turn off lights in rooms you aren't using to energy?
- 7 Do you use rechargeable, or better, a solar ..?
- 8 Which energy-..... steps in the article on the opposite page do you actually take?
- 9 Are you an above-average or below-average of electricity?
- 10 Do you think solar panels are a waste of money or a good ..?
- 11 Do you know how much electricity (%) in your country is by solar energy?
- 12 Do you think you have made financial in recent years by using public transport more?

5 ABOUT YOU Answer the questions in Exercise 4, or ask another student.

.....

.....

.....



A Conservation

With the ongoing **clearing** of forests (also called **deforestation**), many animals are losing their **natural habitat** and starting to **decline** in numbers. In some **regions**, **conservation** groups **point out** that some animals are already **dying out** and are **in danger of extinction**. One **instance** of this is the African elephant, which is now **considered to be an endangered species**.

SPOTLIGHT *extinction n and extinct adj*

If a plant or animal is **extinct**, it no longer exists.

- Some sharks are **becoming extinct**.
- Some sharks are **in danger of extinction**.
- This species is **on the verge of extinction**. (= very close to extinction)

GLOSSARY

clear	remove sth that may not be wanted
habitat	the place where a plant or animal is usually found: <i>the elephant's natural habitat</i>
decline	become smaller, weaker, or less good decline n: be in decline
region	a part of a country or the world regional adj
conservation	the protection of the natural world conserve v
point sth out	mention sth in order to give people information about it and make them notice it
die out	disappear
instance (of sth)	an example or case (of sth); for instance
consider sb/sth to be sth	think of sth/sb in a particular way ALSO consider sb/sth as sth
endangered species	in danger of becoming extinct (<i>see spotlight</i>) a group of plants or animals that are all similar and can breed together

1 Is the meaning of the sentences the same or different? Write S or D.

- 1 The tiger population is in decline. / There are fewer tigers than there were.
- 2 We are destroying their natural habitat. / We are destroying their natural habits.
- 3 Tigers are on the verge of extinction. / Tigers are almost extinct.
- 4 There are laws to conserve their habitat. / There are laws to clear their habitat.
- 5 Flooding is a regional problem. / Flooding is a problem everywhere.
- 6 This species of butterfly is endangered. / This species of butterfly has died out.
- 7 I've seen widespread deforestation. / I've seen many forests cleared.
- 8 Large numbers are declining. / Large numbers are dying out.

2 Complete the phrases with suitable words.

- 1 in of extinction
- 2 point something
- 3 habitat
- 4 decline
- 5 on the of extinction
- 6 endangered

3 Complete the dialogues with a single word in each space.

- 1 Has the dodo died? ~ Yes, it's
- 2 Are forests still being? ~ Yes, it's all part of the process of
- 3 25% of birds are in danger of ~ Yes, and many more are in
- 4 Are there water shortages everywhere? ~ Yes, but they're a lot worse in some
- 5 You can see animals in a zoo. ~ Yes, but it's better to see them in their natural
- 6 Which animals in particular are? ~ Well, the snow leopard, for
- 7 What can people do to help with? ~ It's mostly about education and being aware of your surroundings.
- 8 Many birds are also in numbers. ~ Yes, and if we're not careful some of our birds could out altogether.
- 9 We can't go on consuming as much energy as we do. ~ I know. I keep this out to my family.
- 10 Your aunt knows all about this. ~ Oh yes, she is an expert on conservation.



TEST YOURSELF

B The rhino

Under threat: the rhino¹

- **Poaching** poses the greatest threat to this species, despite the ban on trade in **rhino horn**, which is **sought after** for **decorative** purposes and used in some forms of medicine.
- **Civil war**: War **diverts funds** from conservation, and the high levels of poverty in affected areas increase the **likelihood** that people will **end up** poaching. In some African countries, civil war has led to a serious decline in rhino populations.
- **Habitat loss**: Deforestation has **wiped out** a great deal of rhino **territory**, with a serious drop in the numbers of rhinos that are **breeding**.



GLOSSARY

threat (to sb/sth)	the possibility of trouble or danger: <i>be under threat</i>	divert sth/sb (from sth, to sth)	change the direction of sth, especially away from its original purpose
poaching	hunting animals, birds, etc. illegally. The person is a poacher .	likelihood	SYN probability
pose	create or give sb sth that they must deal with: pose a threat/risk/problem	end up (doing sth)	find yourself in a place/situation that you did not plan/expect to be in
sought after	wanted by many people because it is of high quality or rare	wipe sth out territory	destroy sth completely an area that an animal considers as its own territorial adj : <i>Wolves are territorial animals.</i>
decorative	(of an object or a building) intended to look attractive or pretty	breed	(of animals) have sex and produce young animals
civil war	war between groups from the same country		

4 Cross out the error in each sentence. Write the correct word at the end.

- 1 Cash will need to be divested from one project to another.
- 2 They want to increase numbers but some animals won't feed in zoos.
- 3 The factory puts a real danger to wildlife in the area.
- 4 Opposing groups have been fighting a civic war for years.
- 5 This disease could kill out the whole breed.
- 6 The horn of the animal is sought over by poachers.
- 7 Rhino horn and elephant tusk have a decorational use.
- 8 This poses a threaten to both humans and wildlife.

5 Complete the sentences.

- 1 The disagreement could result in war.
- 2 Poachers want rhino
- 3 Can we the money from there to here?
- 4 Crocodile skin is highly sought
- 5 We could end in a difficult situation.
- 6 Poaching a real danger to the species.
- 7 This breed of penguin could be wiped
- 8 Poachers are a real to the rhinos' survival.

6 Replace the underlined word(s) with a word or phrase that has the same meaning.

- 1 There is little probability of things improving soon.
- 2 You should avoid going into the lions' land.
- 3 He was sent to prison for illegal hunting.
- 4 These animals are in real danger.
- 5 The animal is extremely protective of its land.
- 6 He is a person who kills tigers illegally.
- 7 Some species find it difficult to produce young animals.
- 8 We finally found ourselves in the middle of the forest.

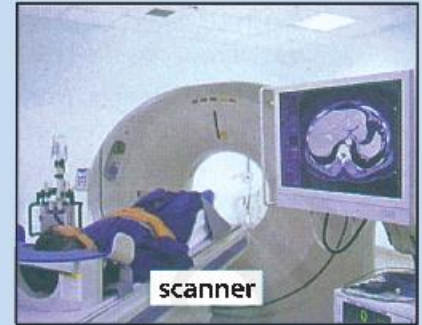


TEST YOURSELF

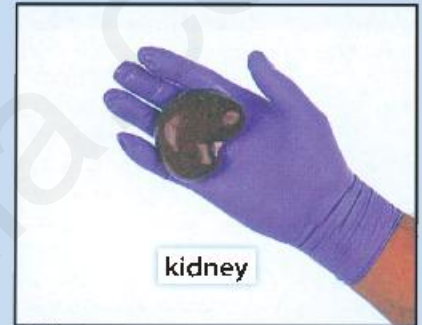
A revolutionary era in medical advances

In recent decades, we have seen **radical** changes in **conventional** medicine:

- 60 years ago, **scanners** did not exist. **Diagnostic** tools were **restricted** to basic X-ray machines.
- Children suffered from **infectious** diseases, for which there was no **effective cure**. Now **vaccines** have **eradicated** some of these illnesses and diseases.
- In the past, if you had a major **operation**, you would be **confined to bed** for weeks. Today, many operations use **procedures** requiring **day surgery** only.
- In the past, the **mortality rate** for patients with **organ** failure, such as heart, lung or **kidney** failure, could be 100%. Today, **transplants** enable many patients to **resume** a normal life.
- The **survival** rate for many cancers has improved considerably over the last forty years.
- **Vitamins** and **minerals** are necessary for good health. There are more **supplements** on the market now for people who do not get enough of certain vitamins or minerals from their normal diet.



scanner



kidney

GLOSSARY

revolutionary era	producing great changes revolution <i>n</i> a period of time that has a particular quality or character	be confined to bed / a wheelchair	have to stay in bed / a wheelchair
advance (In sth)	progress made in science, medicine, technology, etc.	procedure	a medical operation that may or may not require your body to be cut open
radical	new, different and likely to have a great effect	rate	the number of times sth happens within a particular period: survival rate , birth rate , mortality rate
conventional	usual or traditional; not new or different	organ	a part of the body that has a particular function e.g. the heart, the brain
diagnostic	used for finding out what physical or mental problem sb has diagnose <i>v</i> ; diagnosis <i>n</i>	transplant	an operation in which a damaged organ is replaced with one from a donor (- sb who gives part of their body, blood, etc.)
restrict	limit the size, number or amount of sth restriction <i>n</i>	enable sb/sth to do sth	make it possible for sb/sth to do sth
infectious	(of a disease / an illness) can easily be passed on to another person infection <i>n</i> ; infect <i>v</i>	resume <i>formal</i>	begin sth again after an interruption
cure	a medical treatment that makes a sick person well again cure <i>v</i>	vitamin	one of several substances in certain foods that help us grow and be healthy, e.g. vitamin C , vitamin D
vaccine	a substance which is put into the blood and protects the body from disease. The process of giving vaccine is vaccination . vaccinate <i>v</i>	mineral	a natural substance, such as coal, salt, etc. Some minerals are present in food and drink and important for good health.
eradicate <i>formal</i>	destroy or get rid of sth completely SYN wipe (sth) out	supplement	sth that is added to sth else. Vitamin supplements , usually taken in the form of tablets, add vitamins to your diet.

SPOTLIGHT *surgery*

Surgery is medical treatment in which your body is cut open so that a part can be removed or repaired. **SYN** **an operation**, **operate** *v*. The place where this happens is an **operating theatre**, and the person who does it is a **surgeon**. **surgical** *adj*

1 Is the pronunciation of the underlined letters the same or different? Write S or D.

Use the **APP** to help you.

- | | | |
|----------------------------------|---|---|
| 1 revolutionary <u>er</u> | 4 vaccine <u>vac</u> | 7 <u>er</u> enable |
| 2 vitamin <u>mi</u> neral | 5 confined <u>vac</u> | 8 revolutionary <u>er</u> |
| 3 radical <u>di</u> agnose | 6 <u>con</u> fin <u>ed</u> <u>con</u> ventional | 9 <u>re</u> sume <u>infec</u> tious |

2 Complete the table.

NOUN	VERB	ADJECTIVE
revolution	-	.....
.....	restrict	-
surgery	-	.....
vaccine	.....	-
diagnosis	.....	.....
.....	transplant	-
infection	.....	.....

3 Yes or No?

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1 If a disease is eradicated, does it mean it has been restricted? | 4 If you have a disease which is diagnosed, does it mean you are better? |
| 2 Does an organ donor receive an organ from someone else? | 5 Does it matter if your diet doesn't contain any vitamins? |
| 3 Does a radical change mean a very big change? | 6 Is conventional medicine new and different? |
| | 7 If a disease is infectious, can you catch it? |
| | 8 Does surgery involve an operation? |

4 Complete the sentences.

- Her injuries were serious, so they took her straight to the operating
- There are prizes for the most important technological
- Most people get the vitamins and minerals they need, but doctors recommend for some people if they lack certain things in their diet.
- Many changes have taken place since the Victorian
- I wanted to know the current survival for breast cancer.
- The involves inserting a tube into the ear to reduce infection.
- His life was saved thanks to an organ
- Some foods contain a lot of vitamins and
- There are some treatments available, but sadly no effective
- Alongside conventional, other forms of treatment have become popular in recent years.

5 Complete the dialogues.

- Polio has been, I believe. ~ Yes, it's been almost completely
- In some areas, lung cancer treatment is to non-smoking patients only.
~ Yes, I think that may be true for patients needing an organ as well.
- The government has a policy to the elderly against flu. ~ I know, but there's often a shortage of the appropriate when it's needed.
- I don't like all these drugs some doctors give you. I don't trust medicine. ~ Really? But there have been some fantastic in drugs in recent decades.
- Are hospitals much cleaner places than they were many years ago? ~ Yes. Better hygiene has greatly reduced the spread of
- The surgeons had to on Jason; it was a difficult
- ~ Yes, he was to bed for ages. Fortunately he's now recovering.
- My aunt is having a new procedure for her damaged hip. ~ I know. If it succeeds, she'll be able to walk again and a normal life.
- Why did doctors fit the tube in Malcolm's throat? ~ I think it him to breath more easily.



A People on the move

Word	Meaning	Example
flee (from) sth/sb <i>pt/pp fled</i>	escape from a dangerous situation, place or person very quickly	<i>Thousands of people are fleeing the bombing in the city.</i>
refugee	sb who is forced to leave their country for political, religious or environmental reasons	<i>Many refugees have crossed the border to escape the war.</i>
refuge	shelter or protection from trouble or danger	<i>The men had to take/seek refuge in the French embassy.</i>
asylum	the protection a country gives to a refugee	<i>The numbers seeking / applying for asylum have increased recently.</i>
ethnic	connected with or belonging to a nation or race that shares a cultural tradition	<i>an ethnic community</i>
minority	a small group within a community or country that is different because of race, religion, etc.	<i>Ethnic minorities make up 10% of the town's population.</i>
racial discrimination	existing between people of different races the practice of treating sb or a group in society less fairly than others	<i>racial tension/violence</i> <i>a victim of racial/sex discrimination</i>
prejudice (against sb/sth)	a strong dislike of sb, especially based on race, religion or sex, and not on reason or experience	<i>Their decision was based on prejudice and a complete lack of understanding.</i>

SPOTLIGHT *migration*

Migration is the movement of people or animals from one place to another. People are **migrants**.
Immigration is the process of coming to live in a country that is not your own. People are **immigrants**. **migrate** v
Emigration is the process of going to live in another country that is not your own. **emigrate** v

1 Is the pronunciation of the underlined letters the same or different? Write S or D. Use the  to help you.

- 1 flee refugee 3 prejudice refuge 5 ethnic minority 7 racial emigration
 2 refuge asylum 4 migration minority 6 prejudice refuge 8 asylum migrant

2 Circle the correct word(s). Sometimes both words are possible.

- In 2017–2018, *immigration* / *emigration* from the UK to other parts of the world increased.
- Most refugees who *seek* / *apply* asylum do so in a country neighbouring their own.
- Representatives of the city's *ethnic* / *racial* communities are involved in the discussions.
- The villagers took *refugee* / *refuge* in nearby towns.
- In the past, there was more racial *prejudice* / *discrimination*.
- People *fled* / *flew* in terror to escape the flood.
- Ignorance is often behind the prejudice against *migrants* / *immigrants*.
- Women and children were forced to *seek* / *take* refuge in the local church.

3 One word is missing in each line. What is it, and where does it go?

- There's no limit on the number of people given political in this country.
- Racial and sexual is against the law in matters of employment.
- Economic to richer countries has existed for centuries.
- There are over 2,000 seeking political asylum in this country.
- Nearly half a million people were forced to their homes during the civil war, and many of them refuge in the mountains, away from the fighting.
- My neighbour has always had a against people whose skin is a different colour.
- Asians only form a small within the population.
- There has been a lot of tension between different ethnic groups.



TEST YOURSELF

B Migration: a personal experience

Moving from my **native** country was a huge **culture shock**. There was a lot to get used to – not least of all the food! But I didn't suffer the prejudice or **hostility** that some migrants experience. **For the most part**, people have accepted me for what I am, including my religious **faith**. They've seen beyond the **stereotype**. **And for my part**, I recognize the need for **integration** in order to be able to **live in peace with** my neighbours. I still have feelings of **nostalgia** for my **country of origin**, and I suppose I will always be a foreigner in some respects; but this is home now, and I have no **desire** to go back.



GLOSSARY

native	connected with the place where you were born and lived for the first few years of your life: your native country/land/city
shock	the feeling you get when sth unpleasant happens. Culture shock is the confusion and anxiety that sb may feel when they visit or first live in another country.
hostility (to/ towards sb)	very strong aggressive feelings against sb/sth hostile adj
faith	a strong belief in sth, often a religious faith
stereotype	a fixed idea of what a particular type of person or thing is like, but which is often not true stereotypical adj
integration	the process of becoming a full member of a group or society integrate (into sth) v
live in peace (with sb)	live without arguing with other people
nostalgia	a feeling of sadness mixed with pleasure when you think of happy times in the past nostalgic adj
origin	a person's social and family background: <i>a person's country of origin</i> (= where they were born)
desire	a strong wish: have a desire / no desire to do sth

SPOTLIGHT *idioms with part*

- for the most part** mostly; usually
- for my part** speaking for myself **ALSO for his/her, etc. part**
- in part** partly; to some extent: *His success was due in part to luck.*
- have a part to play (in sth)** be able to help sth
 - *We all have a part to play in the fight against racial discrimination.*

4 Combine words/phrases in the box to form six phrases.

culture	live	faith	have no	to play	country
desire to do sth	have a part	of origin	in peace	shock	religious

.....

.....

5 Cross out the word which is wrong. Write the correct word at the end.

- Why is there so much hostility for politicians in this town?
- The problems are due in partly to overcrowding.
- Do you have feelings of nostalgic for your childhood?
- He doesn't fit the stereoscope of a typical 30-year-old businessman.
- The government policy is to aid newcomers' integrity into society.
- I'm a natural New Yorker: in fact, I've never lived anywhere else.

6 Complete the dialogue.

Beth When you first emigrated, what things did you have to get used to?

Amy Well, obviously the climate! But seriously, in my (1) country, many people no longer have a strong religious (2), whereas here, religion is at the heart of people's lives, so that added to my sense of culture (3), I discovered that for the most (4) people had a (5) view of how western women behave, as they seemed surprised when they got to know me. I dressed appropriately and behaved sensitively, as I had no (6) to upset people. Basically, (7) my part, I just wanted to (8) into society as best I could.

Beth And do you feel that's happened?

Amy To be honest, people have never been (9) towards me – quite the opposite. People here just want to live in (10) with each other, as I do. Having said that, I will always be something of a foreigner here, and I still feel (11) sometimes when I think of home.

TEST YOURSELF

<https://denokala.com>

<https://denokala.com>

<https://denokala.com>

<https://denokala.com>

<https://denokala.com>

B In hospital: patients' experiences

The doctors and nurses were very **dedicated** and kept me **informed** at all times.

I know the staff were **rushed off their feet**, but nobody **took any notice of** my calls for help.

I felt **miserable** when I was admitted, but I had **absolute confidence** in the nursing staff and soon felt **my old self** again.

I was **admitted to the ward**, seen by a **junior doctor**, then **nothing happened** for two days.

I felt the whole time that my **well-being** was the staff's **prime concern**.

SPOTLIGHT *staying in hospital*

You can be **admitted to hospital** (= taken there and treated). After treatment, you are **discharged** (= given permission to leave). Then you go home to **convalesce** (= spend time recovering). **SYN recuperate; convalescence n SYN recuperation**

GLOSSARY

dedicated	working hard at sth because it is important to you	absolute	total and complete
inform	tell sb about sth: keep sb informed (about sth)	self	the type of person you are: my old self, my real self
be rushed off your feet	be extremely busy with too many things to do	ward	a room or an area in a hospital for patients with the same type of condition
take (no) notice of sb/sth	pay (no) attention to sb/sth	junior	having a low rank in an organization or profession OPP senior
miserable	very unhappy or uncomfortable	well-being	general health and happiness
		prime	main; most important: a prime concern

5 Circle the correct answer(s). Both answers may be possible.

- I was rushed off my foot / feet.
- She took no / any notice of me.
- I was admitted / discharged to the cancer ward.
- He's back to his old self / self.
- I need to convalesce / recuperate.
- They kept / made me informed.
- They were junior / senior doctors.
- His health was my main / prime concern.
- Patients need rest and recuperation / well-being.
- The staff are admitted / dedicated to patient care.

6 Replace the underlined words with a word or phrase that keeps the same meaning.

- They didn't pay any attention to me. They took
- They told me what was happening. They kept
- I was incredibly busy. I was rushed
- That's part of his true character. That's part of his
- She needs to spend time getting better. She needs to
- I felt really unhappy and uncomfortable. I felt
- I'm worried about his general health and happiness. I'm worried about his
- The staff work hard and care a lot. The staff are

7 Complete the sentences with a suitable word.

- When you are to hospital, you are taken to a for your stay.
- In hospital, patients are always informed about their treatment.
- Staff in hospitals are off their feet all the time.
- For the doctors and nurses, the patient's is their concern.
- There are more senior doctors than doctors.
- Most patients have confidence in the staff.
- Recuperation (or) usually takes place at home.
- When you have recovered sufficiently, you will be from hospital with all the medicines you need for the first week.

8 ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY Do you know if the sentences in Exercise 7 are true for your country?

.....

.....

TEST YOURSELF

Police procedures

An arrest is when a police **constable** **detains** someone **suspected** of an **offence**. In the UK, the police can arrest you if they have a **valid** arrest **warrant** (**issued** by a **magistrate**), or if they have reasonable **grounds** for suspecting you have committed or **are about to** commit an offence. You are **cautioned** and then taken to a police station as soon as possible. Once you are **in custody**, you have the **right** to legal advice from a **solicitor**. If there is sufficient evidence, the police will **charge** you, and you will then appear in court where a magistrate will decide whether you should be **remanded in custody** or **released on bail**.

If your case goes to trial, you will either be **convicted of** the crime, or found innocent and **acquitted**. If you are found guilty, you will be **sentenced** by a judge.



SPOTLIGHT *the police*

A **police officer** is any member of the **police force**. In the UK, a (**police**) **constable** (abbreviated as **PC**) is an officer of the lowest **rank** (= position in an organization). Above the rank of constable is the **sergeant**, the **inspector**, and so on. The **chief constable** is the head of each regional police force.

GLOSSARY

procedure	the usual or correct way for doing sth	custody	the state of being in prison while waiting for trial: in custody
detain	keep sb in an official place, e.g. a police station, and prevent them from leaving: be detained in custody	solicitor	a lawyer who gives legal advice and prepares legal documents
suspect sb of (doing) sth	believe that sb is guilty of sth, though you do not have proof. A person is a suspect .	charge sb (with sth)	say officially you believe sb has committed a crime
offence <i>formal</i>	a crime: commit an offence	remand sb	send sb away from court until their trial: be remanded in custody
valid	legally or officially acceptable <i>OPP</i> invalid	bail	money left with a court of law to ensure that a prisoner will return for their trial. A judge can either grant bail or refuse bail .
warrant	a legal document signed by a judge that allows the police to do sth. A search warrant is a warrant to search sb's property.	convict sb (of sth)	say officially in court that sb is guilty of a crime
issue	give or say sth to sb officially: issue a warrant/ visa	acquit sb (of sth)	state formally that a person is not guilty of a crime
magistrate	an official who acts as a judge in the lowest courts of law	sentence sb (to sth)	(of a judge) tell sb who has been found guilty of a crime what their punishment will be : He sentenced him to two years in prison.
grounds (for sth/ doing sth) <i>(usually pl)</i>	a reason for sth		
be about to (do sth)	be going to do sth very soon		
caution sb <i>formal</i>	warn sb officially that anything they say may be used against them as evidence in court		

1 Underline the stress on these words. Use the APP to help you.

detain suspect v suspect n offence invalid magistrate
custody solicitor remand convict acquit constable

2 Write the missing preposition.

- 1 be detained police custody
- 2 have grounds doing something
- 3 charge someone an offence
- 4 convict someone an offence
- 5 acquit someone a crime
- 6 sentence someone five years

3 Complete the phrases with suitable words.

- 1 a police
- 2 commit an
- 3 a search warrant
- 4 remand someone in
- 5 bail OR refuse bail
- 6 convict OR someone

4 Write your answers.

- 1 Who issues an arrest warrant?
- 2 Who detains someone?
- 3 Who offers legal advice?
- 4 Who is able to grant bail?
- 5 Who is remanded in custody?
- 6 Who cautions someone?
- 7 Who has a lower rank than a sergeant?
- 8 Who is above a sergeant?
- 9 Who is the head of a regional force?
- 10 Who sentences someone?

5 Complete the sentences.

- 1 A PC is the lowest in the police force.
- 2 A search allows the police to search someone's property.
- 3 After someone has appeared before a magistrate and is awaiting trial, they will often be in custody.
- 4 Police have to follow very strict when they arrest someone, otherwise solicitors may argue that an arrest is not
- 5 The police can detain someone if they that this person has committed an
- 6 When police arrest someone, the first thing they do is them.

6 Complete the text with words from the opposite page.

ARRESTED IN ROAD RAGE INCIDENT

An 82-year old man is facing prison after an angry incident at a road junction in which he pointed a gun at another driver and was, possibly, (1) to use it. A young police (2) arrested the man, before taking him to the police station, where he was (3) Once he was in (4), the (5) refused to say anything, and also refused his right to speak to a (6) The police later (7) him with several (8), including the illegal possession of a weapon. The man will now appear before a (9) tomorrow morning, where he hopes to be (10) bail. However, his case will almost certainly go to trial, and if he is (11), he could be (12) to a lengthy period in prison.



A The prison system

An important element of the criminal justice¹ system is punishment for breaking the law. Since the abolition of capital punishment in the UK, imprisonment has been the most serious punishment. It satisfies our need for justice² and longer prison sentences are meant to be a deterrent. Furthermore, criminals who are locked up are no threat to society, and rehabilitation programmes in prison give criminals a chance to change their behaviour. However, the current system is in crisis. More people are being imprisoned, a significant percentage reoffend, and for some criminals, prison is simply regarded as an occupational hazard. Is it just our way of taking revenge? If so, can we justify its continued existence?

GLOSSARY

abolition	the official ending of a law, system or institution abolish v
capital punishment	punishment by death
imprisonment	the act of putting sb in prison imprison v SYN lock sb up inf
justice	1 the legal system that punishes people who have committed crimes 2 the fair treatment of people
deterrent	a thing that makes sb less likely to do sth deter v
rehabilitation	the process of helping people to live a normal life after they have been ill or in prison rehabilitate v
crisis	a period of great difficulty and uncertainty: be in crisis
reoffend formal	commit a crime again. A person is a reoffender .
regard sth/sb as sth	think about sth/sb in a particular way
hazard	a risk or a danger. An occupational hazard is a risk that is part of a particular job.
revenge	action you take to punish sb because they made you suffer: take revenge (on sb) (for sth)
justify	show that sth is right or fair justification n ; justifiable adj

1 Underline the stress on these words. Use the to help you.

abolish	abolition	capital punishment	deterrent
rehabilitate	rehabilitation	reoffender	occupational
hazard	justify	justification	justifiable

2 Rewrite the sentences on the left, using the sentence beginnings on the right. Keep the same meaning.

- | | |
|---|-------------------------------|
| 1 He's been imprisoned. | He's been locked |
| 2 She thinks of me as a friend. | She regards |
| 3 They hang people for some crimes. | They have |
| 4 Can we justify the prison system? | Is the prison system? |
| 5 He was imprisoned for life. | He got life |
| 6 It changed after they abolished the law. | It changed after the |
| 7 It's one of the risks of the job. | It's an |
| 8 Do many people commit a crime again? | Are there many? |
| 9 She wants him to suffer for what he did to her. | She wants to take |
| 10 It's a period of great difficulty. | At the moment we are in |

3 Complete the words in the questions.

- Do you believe you can r..... most criminals?
- Why do so many people r..... and go back to prison?
- Do you think prison is an effective d.....?
- Do you believe in c..... punishment?
- Would you like to a..... anything in your criminal justice system?
- Is there ever any j..... for taking r..... on someone who has harmed you?
- Is the prison system in c..... in your country?
- Do you believe in the criminal j..... system? In your view, does it represent true j.....?

4 ABOUT YOU Write your answers to Exercise 3, or ask another student.



B A different system

GRENDON is not a typical **institution** within the prison system. It is constructed **exclusively** on the **principles of group therapy**, and operates more as a community than a prison for offenders. The **inmates** are all serving long sentences, and a high **proportion** are guilty of violent crime. Yet the prison is different from the normal system in almost every way, with an absence of physical force and **segregation**. The prison is divided into five **self-contained** communities, the prisoners are not **confined in cells**, and decisions are only taken with their **consent**.

SPOTLIGHT *self*

Before nouns and adjectives, **self-** means 'of, to or by yourself'.

- **Self-contained** communities are able to exist without outside help.
- On a **self-catering holiday**, you do the cooking yourself.
- **Self-assessment** is judging your own progress.

GLOSSARY

institution	a large important organization with a particular purpose. An institute is similar but usually for education or a particular profession.	segregation	the policy of separating people of different sex, race, religion, etc, and in prison, by the type of crime committed segregate v
exclusively	completely; with nothing else: <i>We rely exclusively on aid.</i>	confine sb/sth in sth	keep sb/sth within an enclosed area
principle	a law, rule or theory that sth is based on	confinement n: solitary confinement	(= a punishment in which a prisoner is kept alone in a separate cell)
group therapy	the use of group discussion for the treatment of a physical or mental problem or illness	cell	a lockable room for prisoners in a prison or police station
inmate	one of the people living in an institution such as a prison	consent	agreement about sth by common consent with everyone's agreement; by mutual consent with the agreement of both of the sides involved
proportion	a part or share of the whole amount or number		

5 Circle the correct answer(s). Sometimes both answers are possible.

- 1 Solitary **confinement** / **consent** is part of the punishment.
- 2 The **prisons** / **cells** are quite small.
- 3 The management course is based on **self-catering** / **assessment**.
- 4 I think the trip requires the parents' **agreement** / **consent**.
- 5 The prison had to **segregate** / **confine** the men and women in separate cells.
- 6 It is based **exclusively** / **partly** on the original model.
- 7 Most of the **inmates** / **prisoners** are female.
- 8 Prisons have similarities with many other **institutions** / **institutes**.

6 Complete the dialogues with a single word.

- 1 Do they discuss each other's problems? ~ Yes, it's a type of group
- 2 Do they separate men from women? ~ Yes, there's a policy of
- 3 Do you do the cooking yourselves? ~ Yes, it's all self-.....
- 4 Are they locked up every night? ~ Yes, and the are very small.
- 5 Did everyone agree with the change? ~ Yes, it was made by common
- 6 Are many of the men violent? ~ Yes, quite a high
- 7 Did you both agree to the deal? ~ Yes, it was by consent.
- 8 They want prisoners to work together. ~ Yes, The system is based on the of teamwork.
- 9 Was he kept in a cell on his own? ~ Yes, he was in solitary
- 10 Do they rely on charities? ~ No, not, They get some money from the government.

7 ABOUT YOU What do you think of this prison? Is it likely to be more successful than a normal prison? Write your answers, or ask another student.

.....

.....

.....



<https://denokala.com>

<https://denokala.com>

<https://denokala.com>

<https://denokala.com>

<https://denokala.com>

<https://denokala.com>

<https://denokala.com>

<https://denokala.com>

<https://denokala.com>

<https://denokala.com>

<https://denokala.com>

B Fire

The Glasgow School of Art has been **devastated** yet again by a huge fire. More than 120 **firefighters** **tackled** the **blaze**, which began on Friday night and spread to a concert hall next door. There were no reported **casualties**, but police evacuated 27 people from nearby properties as a **precaution**. At the moment, there is no **suspicion** the fire was started **deliberately**, but the **intense** heat is preventing fire officers from getting in to **assess** the damage. First Minister, Nicola Sturgeon, **praised** the **courage** of the firefighters who fought to save the building.

GLOSSARY

devastate	destroy or damage sth badly devastation <i>n</i>
firefighter	a person whose job is to stop fires, working for the fire brigade
tackle	make an effort to deal with a difficult problem or situation
blaze	a large and often dangerous fire
casualty	a person who is killed or injured in a war or accident
precaution	sth you do in order to avoid danger or problems
suspicion	a feeling or belief that sth is wrong or that sb has done sth wrong suspicious (of sb) <i>adj</i> suspect <i>v</i>
deliberately	in a way that was planned deliberate <i>adj</i> SYN intentional
intense	very great, strong or serious: intense heat/cold/pressure intensity <i>n</i>
assess	judge or form an opinion about sth assessment <i>n</i>
praise	say that sb is good and should be admired for sth praise <i>n</i>
courage	the ability to do sth dangerous without showing fear SYN bravery; courageous <i>adj</i>

4 Underline the main stress on these words. Use the APP to help you.

devastate firefighter casualty precaution deliberate suspect
assessment courage courageous intensity intentional suspicion

5 Complete the sentences on the right with a single word. Keep the same meaning.

- There is a suspicion it was deliberate. The police it was deliberate.
- The intense heat caused problems. The of the heat caused problems.
- Fire chiefs are assessing the damage. Fire chiefs are making an of the damage.
- The firefighters showed great courage. The firefighters were very
- The area was devastated. The area suffered huge
- They evacuated people to avoid danger. They evacuated people as a
- One died and four were injured. There were five
- They're making an effort to deal with the problem. They're the problem.

6 Agree with the first speaker, without using the underlined word(s) they use.

- Was it a big fire? ~ Yes, a huge
- Was it intentional? ~ Yes, they think it was started
- I imagine they needed firefighters. ~ Yes, they called the fire
- They were very courageous. ~ Yes, they showed great
- Do the officers judge the outcome? ~ Yes, they make the final
- I hope people admire them for what they did. ~ Yes, they received a lot of
- Do the police think the shopkeeper has done something wrong? ~ Yes, they are
- Was strong pressure really put on her to make a decision? ~ Yes, very

7 Complete the sentences with a suitable word.

- Most of the went to hospital.
- Somebody call the fire
- There is pressure on the fire service.
- The PM everyone for their bravery.
- Investigators have to the damage.
- There is a that the fire was deliberate.



TEST YOURSELF

A A police investigation



Somerset police were last night called to the 200-acre estate of Lord and Lady Appleby, where a body was found in a fishing lake on the property. A dog walker notified the police after spotting a hat and fragments of clothing floating on the lake, and we received confirmation early this morning that they had discovered the body of a young man who had drowned. He has not yet been formally identified, and police from the neighbouring county of Devon are providing assistance with the investigation.

GLOSSARY

acre	a unit for measuring an area of land (approx. 4,000 square metres)	float	stay on or near the surface of sth and not sink
estate	a large area of land, usually in the country, that is owned by one person or one family	confirmation	a statement, letter, etc. that shows that sth is true or definite
lord	a man of high rank in the nobility (= people of high social class) or sb who has been given the title 'lord' as an honour and is entitled to sit in the House of Lords	drown	die because you have been underwater too long and cannot breathe; kill sb in this way
notify	officially tell sb about sth	formally	officially; in a way that follows an agreed way of doing things
fragment	a small part of sth that has broken off or come from sth larger	county	an area of Britain that has its own local government
		assistance	help or support

1 Is the pronunciation of the underlined letters the same or different? Write S or D. Use the to help you.

- 1 lord formally 3 acre fragment 5 confirmation nobility
- 2 acre assistance 4 float notify 6 county drown

2 Replace the underlined word(s) with other words that keep the same meaning.

- 1 They announced it officially.
- 2 They want some kind of written statement.
- 3 He died underwater.
- 4 The paper boat stayed on the surface of the water.
- 5 There were small pieces of metal everywhere.
- 6 They owned a large area of land.
- 7 We will provide them with more help.
- 8 I will inform the police.

3 Complete the sentences.

- 1 I have a very large garden, it's about half an
- 2 I broke a bottle, and there were of glass all over the floor.
- 3 A person who has died will need to be identified by their next-of-kin.
- 4 I could see a plastic bag in the water.
- 5 If you change your personal details in any way, you should your bank.
- 6 If you are offered a job and accept it, the company will require written
- 7 He wasn't born into the nobility, but was later given the title of
- 8 The girl because she fell into deep water and couldn't swim.

4 ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY Write answers to the questions, or ask another student.

- 1 Do you have a word in your language for an area of land that is approximately an acre?
- 2 Do you have many large estates in your country?
- 3 Do you have an equivalent of a *lord* in your country/language?
- 4 Is your country divided into areas equivalent to British counties?
- 5 If someone dies at home of natural causes, who should you notify?



TEST YOURSELF

B A media investigation

The media **regulator** has launched a formal investigation into Australia's biggest news television **networks** after complaints about the live **broadcast** of a shooting in Christchurch, New Zealand. Some **broadcasters** put **edited** versions of the **live stream** on their channels, but **commentators** have argued that none of the content should have been **broadcast**.

A spokeswoman for one network said they always took reasonable steps to avoid offence, **distress** or **prejudice**, unless doing so was regarded as being in **the public interest**. It's a **delicate balancing act** said another station, which had shown brief **clips** of the shooting.

SPOTLIGHT *public*

Public (*adj*) is used in a number of phrases with different meanings.

- **a public figure** a person known by many people
- **public money** money connected with the government
- **a public library** a library for everyone
- **a public appearance** intended to be seen by people in general

GLOSSARY

regulator	a person or an organization that controls an area of business or industry and makes sure it operates fairly regulation <i>n</i>
network	a group of radio or TV stations that are connected and that broadcast the same programmes at the same time
broadcast	a radio or TV programme broadcast <i>v</i> ; Broadcasters are companies that send out radio or TV programmes.
edit	take what has been filmed or recorded and decide which parts to show
live stream	a live broadcast of an event over the internet live-stream <i>v</i>
commentator	a person who is an expert on a subject and talks or writes about it on radio, TV or in a newspaper
distress	a feeling of great worry or unhappiness
prejudice	an unreasonable dislike of or preference for a person, custom, etc, especially when based on race, religion, sex, etc.
delicate	needing skill and sensitive treatment
interest	a good result or an advantage for sb: be in the public interest
balancing act	a process in which sb tries to please two or more groups who want different things
clip	a short part of a film that is shown separately

5 Underline the stress. Use the **APP** to help you with the words, and see where the main stress is in the phrases in the Answer Key.

regulator network edit distress in the public interest
live stream commentator prejudice delicate balancing act

6 Circle the words which are directly connected with the media (i.e. TV, radio or the internet).

network regulator broadcaster clip
prejudice balancing act edit live stream

7 Form six phrases using words in the box.

a public library	a balancing interest	a media prejudice	in the public act	a film clip	racial regulator
------------------	----------------------	-------------------	-------------------	-------------	------------------

.....
.....

8 Complete the sentences.

- 1 Advertisements for a new film often show from the film.
- 2 The event is being live on TV, but you can also watch recorded highlights later.
- 3 News bulletins are not allowed to show violent acts because they cause to many viewers.
- 4 The film has been and most of the violence removed.
- 5 You can watch a of the concert on the day.
- 6 Sometimes TV networks report on difficult things because they are in the interest; other times you don't show certain events. It's a balancing act.
- 7 Some TV programmes are accused of against certain groups of people.
- 8 There were complaints that the sports has made racist remarks about some players, so the media has launched an investigation.



TEST YOURSELF

<https://denokala.com>

<https://denokala.com>

<https://denokala.com>

<https://denokala.com>

<https://denokala.com>

<https://denokala.com>

<https://denokala.com>

<https://denokala.com>

<https://denokala.com>

<https://denokala.com>

<https://denokala.com>

<https://denokala.com>

<https://denokala.com>

B Email stress

The new office workers' plague

If you are constantly **interrupted** by the need to read your emails, your **nerves are on edge**. Over a third of workers say that they are increasingly **overwhelmed** by the **endless stream** of emails they receive, and are **stressed out** by the pressure to respond to them **promptly**. Research has found that some employees check their emails every few minutes, leaving them both **frustrated** and not very **productive**. Women seem particularly **badly-hit** by this **flood** of correspondence. One of the researchers said that email is 'an amazing tool' but agreed that it is **getting out of control**. The advice is to **set aside** two or three specific email reading times each day.

GLOSSARY

interrupt	stop sth/sb from doing sth interruption <i>n</i>
nerves <i>pl</i>	feelings of worry and anxiety. If your nerves are on edge , you feel very nervous or excited.
be overwhelmed (by sth)	have so many things that you cannot deal with them overwhelming <i>adj</i> (of things to do) so many that you feel stressed
endless	seeming to last for ever
stressed out <i>inf</i>	too anxious and tired to be able to relax stress sb out <i>phrasal v</i>
promptly	quickly; without delay prompt <i>adj</i>
frustrated	feeling annoyed or impatient because you cannot do or achieve what you want. Sth that makes you frustrated is frustrating .
productive	producing good results. A person's productivity is how much they produce in a given period.
badly-hit	badly affected by sth ALSO severely/hard hit
be/get out of control	be/become impossible to deal with OPP be under control
set sth aside	keep sth, especially money or time, to use later SYN put sth aside

SPOTLIGHT *metaphorical use of words*

A **plague** is a serious fast-spreading disease which often results in death. In the title, though, it is used metaphorically and describes something that causes a lot of trouble. A **stream** is a small river, but here it means 'a continuous flow of things'. A **flood** is a large amount of water from a river or rain, but in the text it means 'a large quantity of something arriving at the same time'.

5 Circle the correct answer(s). Both answers may be possible.

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1 I always send a prompt / promptly reply to emails. | 5 We always put / set aside some money each month for a party at work. |
| 2 The amount of work was overwhelmed / overwhelming . | 6 We've had a plague / flood of letters this week expressing support. |
| 3 We've been badly / severely hit by a computer virus. | 7 I got very frustrated / frustrating by the constant interruptions. |
| 4 I've had a stream / plague of enquiries about the vacant job. | 8 People were streaming / flooding out of the building. |

6 One word is missing in each sentence. What is it, and where does it go?

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1 Our spending has got of control. | 4 I was overwhelmed the response. |
| 2 He still hasn't called. My are on edge. | 5 There's so much work. I'm out. |
| 3 Fortunately, the situation is control. | 6 He keeps me when I'm working; it's annoying. |

7 Complete the questions with a suitable word from the top of the page.

- Do you have a constant stream of when you're working/studying?
- When you work/study, do often waste time, or are you usually quite
- If you don't think you're achieving much, what might improve your
- Do you think it's important to reply to emails, or can they sometimes wait?
- Do you often feel out because of work or studies?
- Do you ever feel you have an amount of work and you'll never finish it?

8 ABOUT YOU Write your answers to Exercise 7, or ask another student. Give reasons or examples.

.....

.....

.....

TEST YOURSELF

A Business takeovers

Warburg takeover imminent

The battle for Warburg Glass may soon be over. Under the **leadership** of the **former** chairman Matthew Cavendish and with the **backing** of **corporate finance**, a new group is now **mounting** a fresh takeover **bid**. An initial bid has already been rejected, but an improved offer is on the **agenda** for the next meeting of **shareholders**, and this time the **outcome** could be different. City analysts believe Cavendish could **strike a deal** within weeks, **setting off** a new round of **mergers** and **acquisitions**.

SPOTLIGHT *takeover, acquisition, merger*

In a **takeover**, one company takes control of another company by buying most of its shares. In an **acquisition**, one company buys another company which cannot offer its shares for sale to the public. In a **merger**, two companies agree to join and form a single company.

GLOSSARY

imminent	likely to happen soon
leadership	the state or position of being a leader: <i>under sb's leadership</i>
former	having a particular position in the past: <i>the former president/boss</i>
backing	help <i>SYN support</i> ; <i>back v</i>
corporate	connected with a corporation: <i>corporate finance/strategy</i>
mount	organize and begin sth: <i>mount a challenge/campaign</i>
bid	an offer to pay a particular price for sth <i>bid v</i>
agenda	a list of items to be discussed at a meeting
shareholder	sb who owns shares in a business or company
outcome	the result or effect of an action or event
deal	an agreement, especially in business, for the conditions of buying or doing sth: <i>strike/make/conclude a deal</i>
set sth off	start a process or series of events

1 Complete the definitions with a single word.

- Imminent* means something will happen
- The *outcome* of something is the
- If you *set something off*, you it.
- A *shareholder* shares in a company.
- In a *takeover*, you take of another company.
- A *former* boss was the boss in the
- If you have *backing*, you have
- If you *make a deal*, you have an

2 Complete the sentences.

- If we're lucky, we could a deal next week.
- He wants to buy the company and has already made one
- If there is more uncertainty, it could off another wave of selling.
- John Emery is preparing to a challenge for the leadership.
- The takeover hasn't happened yet, but it's
- Wainwrights have already bought one company; this could be their second
- The sale price is the main item on the for the next meeting.
- It is likely to be a very large business deal which relies on finance.

3 Rewrite the sentences without using the underlined words. Keep the same meaning.

- She used to be my boss. She's my
- He will be leader of the group. The group will be under
- I need them to support me. I need their
- We could reach an agreement. We could strike
- Will the people who hold shares be happy? Will the be happy?
- Are you expecting a different result? Are you expecting a different ?
- Will they offer more money? Will they make ?
- The two companies have agreed to join. The two companies have agreed a



TEST YOURSELF

B Describing business activity

Shares have **climbed** in recent weeks

JPS still **pursuing hostile** takeover despite opposition

Denham's **issues** fresh profit warning

Prices have **soared** this year

Shares **reach** a new **peak**

Ibisco **floats** possible store closures

Markets **collapse** in the wake of coup

Sales **plunge** by 40%

GLOSSARY			
climb	(of prices, temperature, etc.) increase in value or amount	hostile	(of a takeover) not wanted by the company that is to be bought
soar	rise very quickly <i>SYN</i> rocket	peak	the point when sth/sb is at its highest, its best, etc. <i>reach a peak</i>
collapse	decrease suddenly in value or amount	plunge	(of prices, temperature, etc.) decrease suddenly in value and amount <i>SYN</i> plummet
in the wake of sth/sb	coming after or following sth/sb	issue	make sth known formally
coup	a sudden change of government that is illegal and often violent	fresh	new
pursue	continue to discuss sth, find out about or be involved in sth	float	suggest an idea or plan for others to consider

4 Is the pronunciation of the underlined letters the same or different? Write S or D. Use the APP to help you.

- | | | |
|-------------------------------|---------------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1 <u>soar</u> float | 3 <u>plunge</u> <u>plummet</u> | 5 <u>coup</u> <u>found</u> |
| 2 <u>climb</u> <u>hostile</u> | 4 <u>collapse</u> <u>pursue</u> | 6 <u>coup</u> <u>climb</u> |

5 Replace the underlined word(s) with a word or phrase that keeps the same meaning.

- 1 The price has gone up very quickly.
- 2 Sales have fallen very quickly.
- 3 The value has reached its highest point.
- 4 We could do with some new ideas.
- 5 There has been a sudden and violent change of government.
- 6 The share price has started to increase in value.
- 7 Problems started following the resignation of the chairman.
- 8 The company is still continuing to discuss and find out about a possible deal.

6 Complete the dialogues in a suitable way.

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1 It's been a great year for sales. | ~ Yes, they have _____ this year. |
| 2 Why has it been so disastrous? | ~ The market _____ after the rise in oil prices. |
| 3 Have the profits definitely fallen? | ~ Yes, the chairman has _____ a statement. |
| 4 The shareholders don't want this to happen. | ~ No, it's a _____ takeover. |
| 5 Are tax rises definite? | ~ No, but the minister has _____ the idea several times. |
| 6 Prices fell in the summer. | ~ True, but they are starting _____ again now. |
| 7 It's a rich country. | ~ Yes, but since the _____, the economy has been very unstable. |
| 8 Are sales at their highest point now? | ~ Yes, I would say they've _____. |
| 9 Are they still involved in discussions about a merger? | ~ No, they've decided not to _____. |

TEST YOURSELF

Gecko Headgear Ltd is a designer and **manufacturer** of **safety helmets** for use at sea. The company was **founded** in 1993 by Jeff Sacree and it started by selling **surfboards**. However, surfing is a seasonal business, and Jeff realized he needed to **diversify**. Fortunately, he was able to **exploit a gap in the market**.

'As a surfer, I could see the **potential** for a light helmet that gave **protection** and **retained** heat.' He made one and sold a few to other **surfers**. He then did some research and discovered that **lifeboat crews** might also be interested in his helmet. It would have to be **adapted** for their use, and for that he needed **investment**. So, he **took out a bank loan** and employed more staff. 'A good relationship with the bank is crucial if you're developing an **innovative** product. In our **case** the process took three years.' The new safety helmets were **launched** in the late 90s.

After the **contract** to supply helmets for the lifeboats was successful, Jeff developed different types of helmet for different uses, and the **firm** has always used customer **feedback** to **refine** the products.

'A good **partnership** with suppliers has also been a key factor in our success. We've worked closely with different manufacturers, and this has helped us to **keep ahead** of our **rivals**.'

safety helmet



surfboard



surfer

lifeboat



GLOSSARY

manufacturer	a person or a company that makes things using machines SYN producer; manufacture v	investment	the activity of putting money into sth, hoping that you will make more money as a result invest in sth v
found v (often passive)	start an organization. A person is a founder .	loan	money that sb/sth lends you: take out a (bank) loan
diversify	introduce a wider range of products diversification n	launch	start sth new or show sth for the first time launch n
exploit	make the best possible use of sth exploitation n	innovative	introducing new ideas innovate v; innovation n
gap in the market	an opportunity to create a new product which has not been produced by other companies	case	a situation (see <i>spotlight</i>)
potential	the possibility of becoming successful in the future	contract	a written legal agreement: sign a contract
protection	the act of keeping sb/sth safe so it or they are not harmed or damaged	firm	a business company
retain	keep or continue to have sth retention n	feedback	information and comments from people who have used sth: give sb feedback (on sth)
crew	all the people who work on a boat, ship, aircraft, etc.	refine	change sth a little to make it better
adapt sth (for sth)	change sth so you can use it in a different situation	partnership	a relationship between two organizations
		keep ahead (of sb/sth)	remain in a stronger position compared to sb/sth
		rival	a person or thing that is competing with you SYN competitor

SPOTLIGHT *phrases with case*

- in some cases** in some situations
 - *I got a reply immediately, but **in some cases** you have to wait weeks.*
- in that case** if that is the situation
 - *I'm busy on Monday. ~ OK, **in that case**, I'll call you on Tuesday.*
- in any case** whatever happens or has happened; anyway
 - *The traffic will be bad. **In any case**, we'll be there on time, so don't worry.*

1 Read the text again quickly if necessary, then answer these questions.

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1 What is Gecko Headgear? | 6 How did he get the money for extra staff? |
| 2 When was it founded? | 7 What happened in the late 1990s? |
| 3 Why did Jeff need to diversify? | 8 What information has he used to refine the products? |
| 4 What qualities did the helmet have to have? | 9 What was a key factor in his success? |
| 5 Were the helmets immediately suitable for lifeboat crews? | |

2 Complete the table.

VERB	NOUN	VERB	NOUN
retain	innovate	.....
invest	exploit	.....
diversify	launch	.....

3 Change the order of the letters to make words. Use the definitions to help you.

- | | |
|---------------------|--|
| 1 TOCCARNT | a written legal agreement |
| 2 NATERI | keep or continue to have something |
| 3 ONPIRCTNEOT | keeping someone safe from harm |
| 4 EFKABEDC | comments from people who use something |
| 5 VINVONITEA | introducing new ideas |
| 6 REDYFIVIS | introduce a wider range of products |
| 7 PERITNSARPH | a relationship between two organizations |
| 8 LOPENIFAT | the possibility of becoming good in the future |

4 Circle the correct answer(s). Sometimes both answers are possible.

- They are the main *producers / manufacturers*.
- If we can't use the product like that, we may have to *exploit / adapt* it.
- You can't compete in Europe. ~ In *that case / any case*, we'll look outside Europe.
- We have to *keep ahead of / retain* our competitors.
- She *invested / founded* the company ten years ago.
- We need to know what our *rivals / competitors* are doing.

5 Replace the underlined words with a single word that has the same meaning.

- You have to make the best possible use of your strengths.
- The introduction of new ideas was crucial.
- The product needed to be improved a little bit.
- My partners were prepared to put money in the company.
- They signed a written legal agreement.
- I knew the product had the possibility to become better.
- We try to get information and comments on our products.
- They wanted to introduce a wider range of products.

6 Complete the sentences.

- They were lucky because they saw a in the market.
- I needed extra money so I a bank
- They washing machines, but mostly sell them abroad.
- You need people who are willing to you feedback.
- The company will need more if it wants to diversify.
- Many of the on a lifeboat have worked at sea in other jobs.
- In some people take out a loan, but I borrowed money from my parents.
- Innovation helps a company to ahead of its
- Carol Simmons was the of the company. Her decision to sell the four years later was a surprise.
- We plan to the new design in Paris at the end of the month.

A Success

- A** Maximo, your restaurant chain has been **thriving** now for over 20 years. What's the **secret of your success**?
- B** There's no secret really, and it hasn't always been successful. Life was tough at the beginning, and, as you would expect with a new business, we've had various **obstacles** to **overcome**. But I guess the big **breakthrough** was winning the *Master Chef* competition on TV, and since then we've **gone from strength to strength**. However, I don't want to **boast** about myself. The main reason for the success, I think, is the **dynamic** team of young chefs I have working for me. They are **passionate** about what they do and **aspire to** be the best. And you can never be **satisfied** with where you are, never relax. **Forward planning** is essential ...

GLOSSARY	
thrive	grow or develop well SYN flourish
the secret of your success	a way of doing things that has brought you success
obstacle	a situation or event that makes it difficult for you to do sth
overcome	manage to control or deal with a problem
breakthrough	an important development that may lead to an achievement or agreement: make a breakthrough
go from strength to strength	become more and more successful
boast	talk with too much pride about sth you have done or can do boast n
dynamic	(of a person or a business) full of energy and ideas dynamism n
passionate	showing very strong feelings
aspire (to sth / to be sth)	have a strong desire to do or be sth
satisfied	pleased because you have done what you wanted to do OPP dissatisfied
forward planning	planning for the future

1 Good or bad? Write G or B.

- We went from strength to strength.
- I've overcome all obstacles.
- I'm still waiting for a breakthrough.
- Their business is flourishing.
- I've never aspired to anything.
- He's always boasting.
- The company has been thriving for years.
- They're a dynamic business.
- We've had so many obstacles.
- She is easily satisfied.

2 Complete the questions with a suitable word from the top of the page.

- Can businesses without a lot of hard work and a bit of luck?
- In life, is it important to be about what you do and the way you do it?
- Is planning important if you want to be successful at anything?
- Is there something that you particularly to do in your own future?
- Have there been any particular obstacles in your life that you've had to ?
- Would you say that is an essential quality for success in business – and life?
- Do you think it's possible to talk about the things you have done or achieved without ?
- Are there positive things you've done where you nevertheless feel a bit for some reason?
- Think of someone who is very successful. What is the of their success?
- Can you think of a recent in the area of either medicine or technology?

3 ABOUT YOU Write answers to the questions in Exercise 2, or ask another student.

.....

.....

.....

<https://denokala.com>

<https://denokala.com>

<https://denokala.com>

<https://denokala.com>

<https://denokala.com>

<https://denokala.com>

<https://denokala.com>

<https://denokala.com>

<https://denokala.com>

<https://denokala.com>

B The basics of academic writing

In a piece of academic writing, the writer will do at least some of the following:

- **outline** their main ideas
- **explore** certain ideas in greater depth
- **illustrate** their ideas
- **adopt** a particular **stance** or point of view
- **draw conclusions**

They may also compare and contrast, **condemn** or **condone**, explain, describe, analyse, evaluate, summarize, **assert**, **justify**, and – to the annoyance of some people – **sit on the fence**.

GLOSSARY

outline	give a description of the main points involved in sth outline <i>n</i>
explore	examine sth carefully: explore an idea ; exploration <i>n</i>
illustrate	make the meaning of sth clearer by giving examples illustration <i>n</i>
adopt	take a particular point of view, or use a particular method
stance (on sth)	an opinion that sb has about sth and expresses publicly SYN position
conclusion	a decision that you make about sth after thinking about it, discussing it and looking at any evidence: draw/reach/come to a conclusion (about sth)
condemn	say publicly that you think sth/sb is bad or wrong condemnation <i>n</i>
condone	accept behaviour that most people think is wrong
assert	state clearly that sth is true assertion <i>n</i>
justify	show that sth is right or reasonable justification <i>n</i>
sit on the fence	avoid deciding or saying which side of an argument you support

4 The pronunciation of the underlined letters is the same in seven of the words. Which word is different? Use the **APP** to help you.

adopt assert conclusion condemn condone justify illustrate position

5 Which of these words clearly show a particular point of view?

condemn outline condone assert explore justify adopt a stance illustrate

6 Complete the sentences with a form of the word in capitals.

- | | |
|---|------------|
| 1 There was universal of the attack. | CONDEMN |
| 2 What did you draw about the reason for the delay? | CONCLUDE |
| 3 I thought he gave a good of his point. | ILLUSTRATE |
| 4 The book is an of the human mind. | EXPLORE |
| 5 He was correct in his that the man was guilty. | ASSERT |
| 6 What was his for the government's position? | JUSTIFY |

7 Replace the underlined words with a word or phrase that keeps the same meaning.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1 She gave a <u>general picture of</u> her ideas. | She |
| 2 She was <u>very critical of</u> his behaviour. | She |
| 3 She <u>went on to analyse</u> the idea in more depth. | She then |
| 4 She wouldn't <u>accept or tolerate</u> his behaviour. | She wouldn't |
| 5 She didn't <u>take and support</u> a clear <u>position</u> . | She didn't a clear |
| 6 She couldn't <u>show</u> her ideas <u>were reasonable</u> . | She couldn't her ideas. |
| 7 She <u>gave examples of</u> her ideas. | She her ideas. |
| 8 In the end, she <u>wouldn't agree or disagree</u> . | In the end, she |
| 9 She continued to <u>state very clearly</u> that she was innocent. | She continued to that she was innocent. |
| 10 He didn't <u>come to any final decisions or judgement</u> . | He didn't |



TEST YOURSELF

Far from the Madding Crowd

by Thomas Hardy

Summary: After **inheriting** her uncle's farm, Hardy's heroine, Bathsheba Everdene, becomes an independent woman. Her beauty attracts many admirers: farm worker Gabriel Oak, landowner William Boldwood, and handsome soldier Frank Troy, whom she later marries. However, Troy is a selfish and **evil** man who allows his earlier love, Fanny Robin, to die in poverty while giving birth to his child. Boldwood hates Troy, and later in the novel he kills him in a jealous **rage**. Gabriel asks for **mercy** to be shown him, and Boldwood escapes death but is sent to prison instead. The novel ends with Bathsheba marrying Gabriel.

Commentary: **Incidents**, such as Fanny's **pregnancy** and her terrible death, and Boldwood's act of murderous violence, **convey** Hardy's growing taste for **tragedy**. But unlike Tess in the later *Tess of the D'Urbervilles*, **fate** still favours Bathsheba, as she finally finds happiness with Gabriel, who **embodies** the best qualities of the rural community in its fight against industrialization*, which Hardy found so **alien**.

Hardy **exposes** the dangers **inherent** in romantic love: relationships based on romantic love are by nature **irrational**, unstable and at risk of **betrayal**. In contrast, he **implies** that the true basis of a happy marriage is **companionship** and a common interest.

For some it is also an early example of **feminist** literature. Bathsheba is **portrayed** as an independent woman with the courage to **defy convention** and run a farm by herself.

Her passionate nature leads her into errors of judgement, but Hardy gives her the qualities of strength, intelligence and good luck to overcome the mistakes of youth.

***industrialization** = the development of new manufacturing processes in Britain from the late 18th century into the 19th century

GLOSSARY

inherit	receive property, money, etc, from sb who has died inheritance <i>n</i>	expose	tell the true facts about sth and show it to be bad or wrong
evil	morally bad; causing harm to people evil <i>n</i>	inherent (in sth)	If sth is inherent in sth, it is a natural part of it and cannot be removed from it.
rage	a feeling of violent anger that is difficult to control	irrational	not logical or sensible OPP rational
mercy	a kind or forgiving attitude towards sb you have the power to harm or the right to punish	betrayal	the act of being disloyal to sb who trusts you betray <i>v</i>
commentary	a written explanation or discussion of sth such as a book	imply	suggest sth in an indirect way without actually saying it implication <i>n</i>
incident	sth that happens, especially sth that is unusual or unpleasant	companionship	a friendly and comfortable relationship between people
pregnancy	the state of being pregnant (= expecting a baby)	feminist	having the belief that women should have the same rights and opportunities as men
convey sth (to sb)	communicate ideas and feelings to sb	portray	describe sb/sth in a piece of writing SYN depict
tragedy	a very sad event, especially one that often involves death	defy	refuse to obey a law, a rule or a person defiant <i>adj</i>
fate	a power that is believed to control everything and that cannot be changed	convention	the behaviour and attitudes that most people consider to be normal and right conventional <i>adj</i> ; OPP unconventional
embody formal	be a good example of sth		
alien	strange, difficult to understand, and often unacceptable		

1 Mark the stress on these words. Use the APP to help you.

expose imply defy convey portray embody inherit inherent

2 Add the related words.

betray n inherit n pregnancy adj
portray n defy adj convention adj
imply n evil n adj

3 Circle the correct answer.

- 1 A commentary on a novel is a summary / an explanation of the main events.
2 If something is alien to you, it is easy / difficult to understand.
3 Unconventional beliefs are considered to be strange / normal.
4 Fate is considered to be within / beyond our control.
5 If you expose someone, you tell the truth / lies about them.
6 If you inherit something, it usually comes from someone you know / don't know.
7 An implication is a direct / an indirect way of saying something.
8 If you are defiant, you agree / refuse to do something.

4 Replace the underlined word(s) with a word (or words) that has a similar meaning.

- 1 She is portrayed as a very honest character.
2 Martha is expecting a baby.
3 The best man's speech is one of the traditional parts of a wedding.
4 You could see he was full of violent anger.
5 She is able to communicate a lot of feeling through her gestures.
6 His attitude is not logical or reasonable.
7 She is a good example of optimism and positive thinking.
8 She misses the enjoyment of being with Ellen.

5 Complete the dialogues with a suitable word.

- 1 Did he say Callum was responsible? ~ He didn't actually say it, but he it.
2 Do you often wear black? ~ No, but it's fairly to wear black at funerals.
3 How did you feel living in New York? ~ At first it felt very .
4 Did she write about the rights of women? ~ Yes, she wrote some of the earliest literature.
5 What's the book about? ~ Basically it's about the conflict of good and .
6 Did her parents leave her the house? ~ Yes, that was part of her .
7 Is there a risk with this kind of company? ~ Yes, there's an risk with any new business.
8 Are there any evil characters? ~ Yes, and she their evil and cruelty throughout the novel.
9 Was the a surprise? ~ Yes, nobody knew they wanted a baby.
10 Was he ever violent? ~ Yes, I remember one when he attacked somebody.

6 Complete the summary of the novel with words from the box, in the correct form.

fate tragedy mercy portray
embody convey defy betray embodiment

Tess is the heroine of Hardy's novel that bears her name: Tess of the D'Urbervilles. She is (1) in the novel as a daughter of nature, and (2) many noble qualities that make her such a sympathetic character. But time and again she has to endure suffering from the brutal Alec D'Urbeville, who is the (3) of evil in the novel. The other man in her life is Angel Clare, an intelligent young man who (4) convention and is happy to work on a farm rather than go to university. He and Tess fall in love and marry, but when Tess tells him that she has previously had a child by Alec, Angel feels (5) and leaves her. (6) is sometimes kind to Hardy's heroines, but not in this case. Tess goes back to Alec, but when Angel returns from Brazil and forgives her, she stabs Alec to death. Unlike Boldwood at the end of Hardy's earlier novel Far from the Madding Crowd, Tess is shown no (7). She is executed for her crime, although the final (8) is only (9) to us by a black flag being waved over the prison.



<https://denokala.com>

<https://denokala.com>

<https://denokala.com>

<https://denokala.com>

<https://denokala.com>

<https://denokala.com>

<https://denokala.com>

<https://denokala.com>

<https://denokala.com>

<https://denokala.com>

<https://denokala.com>

<https://denokala.com>

<https://denokala.com>

B Adding tone and emphasis

Some idioms are used to add extra politeness or emphasis, and to prepare the listener for what you are going to say.

<i>Do you know if they're married, by any chance?</i>	used especially in questions to ask if sth is true or possible
<i>I wouldn't mind a cup of tea, if it's no trouble.</i>	used to say politely that you would very much like sth / to do sth
<i>I'd love to go. The (only) thing is, I promised to help my dad in the garden.</i>	used to introduce an explanation, and often one that suggests there is a problem
<i>I didn't like it at all. / I'm not at all keen on it.</i>	used to emphasize a negative statement (used after a verb but before or after an adjective)
<i>You should read it. It's by far his best book.</i>	used to emphasize what you are saying
<i>Smoking is very bad for your health, not to mention the cost.</i>	used to introduce extra information and emphasize what you are saying
<i>Guess what! Ed and Sal are moving to Kenya.</i>	used before giving sb surprising or exciting news
<i>Believe it or not, he asked if he could live with us.</i>	inf used to introduce information which is true but surprising
<i>He's been working since 7 o'clock this morning, so no wonder he's tired.</i>	inf used to emphasize the fact that sth is not surprising
<i>Where on earth did you get those boots?</i>	used after wh- questions to indicate surprise, and sometimes annoyance, about sth
<i>I'd like to ask you a few questions, if you don't mind.</i>	used to check that sb does not object to sth that you want to do, or ask sb politely to do sth SYN if you wouldn't mind
<i>The room is empty but, for some reason, we're not allowed to use it.</i>	used to say, often with slight annoyance, you don't know the reason for sth or don't understand it

4 Cross out one wrong word in each sentence.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1 That's by very far the worst article. | 5 Who on the earth gave you that tie? |
| 2 Believe it or believe not, he's a politician. | 6 I'd like to borrow this if that you don't mind. |
| 3 The only bad thing is, I can't afford to go. | 7 He's bad at the job, not to be mention lazy. |
| 4 Guess you what – I'm getting married. | 8 I wouldn't really mind a lift, if that's OK. |

5 Complete the idiom or set phrase in each sentence.

- what! I've got a new job.
- I'd love to go to Brazil in December, but the is, my exams are in January.
- What on are you doing here this morning? It's Saturday!
- I made a special trip to the post office, but for reason, they closed early.
- I'm not hungry, but I mind a glass of water if that's OK.
- He won all his matches, so no he's delighted.
- Have you got any string I could use by any
- The book was great, but I wasn't at impressed with the film; it was far too long.

6 Add a suitable idiom or set phrase to these sentences.

- It didn't work.
- Do you know if it's open?
- Melinda's going to marry a famous pop star.
- Why are you wearing gloves in the summer?
- Jacob looks about 20, but he's only 13.
- He's been very ill, so he looks thin.
- They have a large apartment here, a farm in Wales and a house on the coast.
- We said we were members, but they wouldn't let us in.
- It is his most violent film.
- I'd like to know more about your background.



<https://denokala.com>

<https://denokala.com>

<https://denokala.com>

<https://denokala.com>

<https://denokala.com>

<https://denokala.com>

<https://denokala.com>

<https://denokala.com>

<https://denokala.com>

<https://denokala.com>

<https://denokala.com>

<https://denokala.com>

<https://denokala.com>

<https://denokala.com>

<https://denokala.com>

1 Underline the stress on these words. Use the APP to help you.

transport n transport v combat n, v extract n
extract v deposit n, v dispute n, v torture n, v

2 Match 1-8 with a-h

- 1 He tackled a for a moment, then carried on.
2 She drafted b loudly when they scored.
3 He paused c the player without the ball.
4 She sat d some distant members of her family.
5 He deposited e with alcoholism for years.
6 She's traced f a couple of emails.
7 He battled g in the shade to stay cool.
8 She cheered h most of the money in a bank account.

3 Rewrite these sentences using the noun instead of the underlined verb.

- 1 The speaker paused then sat down. There
2 The table was completely shaded. The table
3 We have a device to filter the oil. We have
4 The Liberals are leading by five points. The Liberals
5 We could hear the crowd cheering. We could
6 They tortured two of the prisoners. Two of the prisoners
7 How will they transport the goods? What?
8 It will be a battle to get the idea approved. They will

4 Complete the sentences with a suitable noun or verb.

- 1 He read a short from his new play.
2 I'd like you to meet a of mine. His name is Patrick.
3 I'm trying to the family who used to live in our house.
4 The landlord wants a of one month's rent.
5 Several soldiers were killed or wounded in
6 Police recovered the money but there was no of the stolen jewellery.
7 Doctors are looking for a way to the spread of the disease.
8 Where can I the money?
9 The government have released the figures, but the opposition are them.
10 The player was just outside the penalty area.

5 ABOUT YOU Write answers to the questions, or talk to another student.

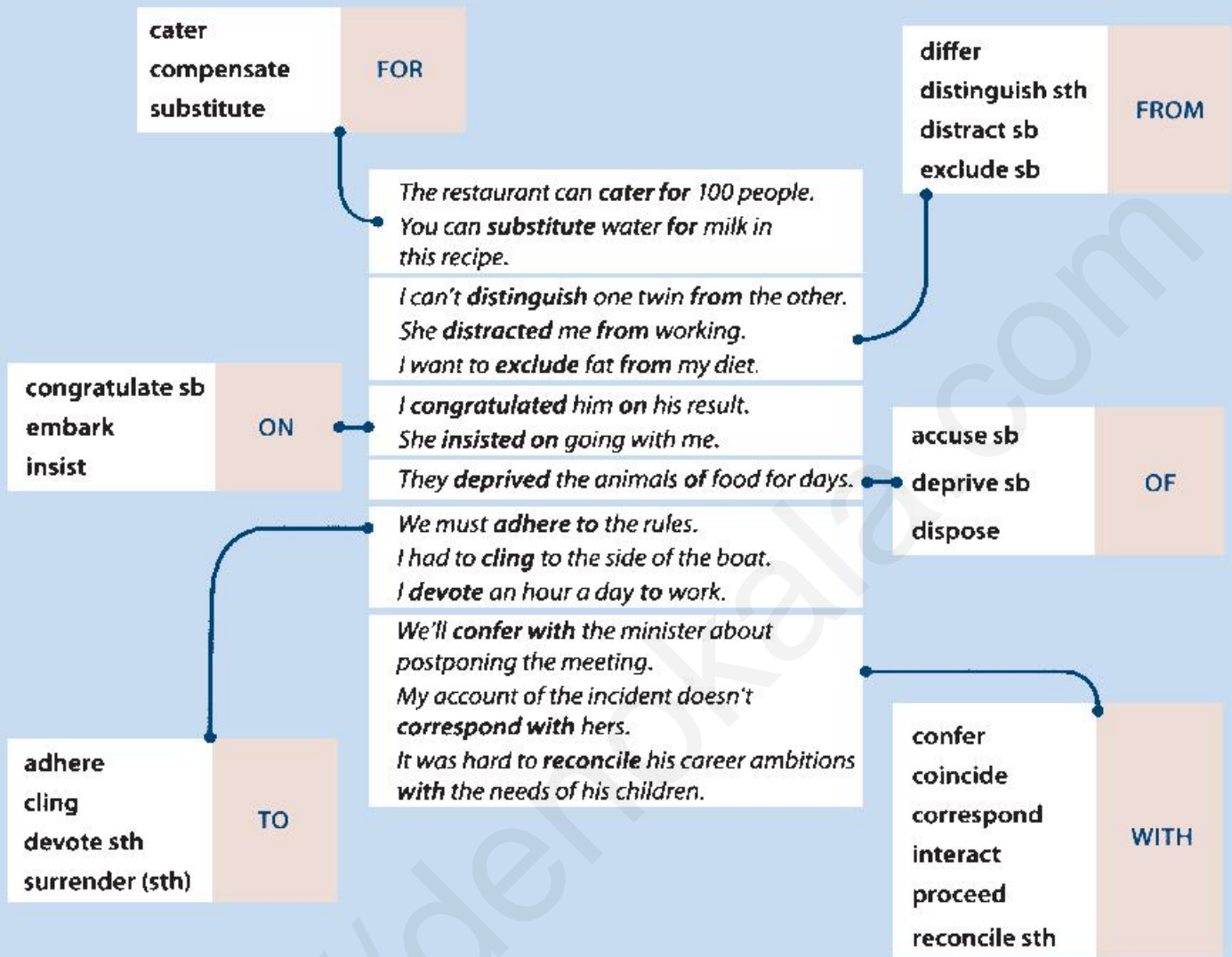
- 1 Who is your best mate?
2 Have you ever been in dispute with an organization. If so, what was it about?
3 Have you ever tried to trace your family history?
4 Have you ever had to battle really hard to achieve something? If so, what?
5 When was the last time you deposited money in a bank account? How much was it for?
6 Do you prefer sitting in the sun or in the shade? Why?
7 Do you often cheer at sports events or social events? If so, what particular events?
8 Have you ever had to pay a deposit for something? If so, what, and when?

6 Look at this list of verbs. Which ones can also be used as nouns with the same form?

abuse accept alert adjust applaud
support bid bow coincide chase

.....
.....





GLOSSARY

confer (with sb) (on/about sth) <i>formal</i>	discuss sth with sb in order to exchange opinions or get advice	accuse sb (of sth)	say that sb has done sth wrong or is guilty of sth
interact (with sb)	communicate with sb, especially when you are with them	distinguish sth (from sth)	recognize the difference between two people or things
proceed (with sth)	continue doing sth that has already started	exclude (sth from sth)	deliberately not include sth in what you are doing
coincide (with sth)	(of two or more events) take place at the same time	differ (from sth/sb)	be different from sth/sb
correspond (with sth)	be the same as or match sth	distract sb/sth (from sth)	take sb's attention away from what they are trying to do
reconcile sth (with sth)	find an acceptable way of dealing with two or more ideas, needs, etc. that seem to be opposed to each other	insist (on sth / doing sth)	demand that sth happens or that sb do something
adhere to sth <i>formal</i>	behave according to a particular law, rule, set of instructions, etc.	embark on sth <i>formal</i>	start to do sth new or difficult
surrender (to sb)	admit you have been defeated and want to stop fighting	congratulate sb (on sth)	tell sb you are pleased about their success
cling (on) to sth/sb	hold on tightly to sth/sb	cater for sth/sb	provide food and drinks for a social event
devote sth to sth	give an amount of time, attention, etc. to sth	compensate sb (for sth)	provide sth good to balance or reduce the bad effects of damage, loss, etc. SYN make up for sth
deprive sb/sth of sth	prevent sb from having or doing sth, especially sth important	substitute (sth) (for sth/sb)	take the place of sth/sb; use sth/sb instead of sth/sb else
dispose of sth	get rid of sth that you do not want or cannot keep		

1 Underline the stress on these words. Use the APP to help you.0

proceed interact exclude correspond embark
reconcile congratulate distinguish adhere substitute

2 Organize the verbs below into two groups: verbs which have a positive sense or suggest moving forward; and verbs which have a more negative sense or suggest that something is being removed.

deprive embark interact dispose exclude
congratulate proceed surrender confer reconcile

MORE POSITIVE

MORE NEGATIVE

.....
.....
.....

3 Complete the sentences with the correct preposition.

- 1 It wasn't necessary but he insisted helping us.
- 2 Their views differ mine.
- 3 The children were deprived adequate food and clothing.
- 4 This letter corresponds what they said in their email.
- 5 The party will coincide my birthday.
- 6 I couldn't distinguish one trumpet another.
- 7 They accused me lying.
- 8 When are the team planning to embark their polar expedition?

4 Replace the underlined word(s) with another word that keeps the same meaning.

- 1 I will have to discuss this with colleagues before I can give you an answer.
- 2 My aunt has for years given all her time to her sick elderly father.
- 3 I can't tell an American accent from a Canadian one.
- 4 We can carry on with our plan.
- 5 It's difficult to communicate with so many children at the same time.
- 6 We are going to get rid of that furniture.
- 7 I can't provide food and drink for that many people.
- 8 We must stick firmly to the rules and regulations set by the committee.
- 9 The lovely cucumbers we've grown will make up for the tomatoes we had to throw away.
- 10 The little boy had to hold on tightly to his mother's coat.

5 Complete the sentences with the correct verb.

- 1 Most of the rebel soldiers have to the army and are now prisoners.
- 2 How do you increased air travel with the need to protect the environment?
- 3 When my brother plays loud music, it really me from working.
- 4 It was my treat, and I on paying for everything.
- 5 If you are of certain vitamins, your health will eventually suffer.
- 6 I Sarah on her exam results. She was very pleased.
- 7 Nothing can really for the loss of a loved one.
- 8 They often me from their conversations. It makes me feel very lonely.
- 9 The type of cheese isn't important: you can cheddar for parmesan.
- 10 Both parents all of their free time to their children.

6 Write the prepositions that usually follow these verbs. They are not only the prepositions used above, but the verbs have been taught elsewhere in this book. Use the Word List if necessary.

cope sth relate sb subtract sth sth
impose sth sb stare sb reflect sth
stem sth opt sth



<https://denokala.com>

<https://denokala.com>

<https://denokala.com>

<https://denokala.com>

<https://denokala.com>

<https://denokala.com>

<https://denokala.com>

<https://denokala.com>

<https://denokala.com>

<https://denokala.com>

<https://denokala.com>

<https://denokala.com>

<https://denokala.com>

<https://denokala.com>

<https://denokala.com>

<https://denokala.com>

<https://denokala.com>

<https://denokala.com>

<https://denokala.com>

<https://denokala.com>

<https://denokala.com>

<https://denokala.com>

<https://denokala.com>

<https://denokala.com>

<https://denokala.com>

<https://denokala.com>

<https://denokala.com>

<https://denokala.com>

<https://denokala.com>

<https://denokala.com>

<https://denokala.com>

<https://denokala.com>

<https://denokala.com>

<https://denokala.com>

<https://denokala.com>

<https://denokala.com>

<https://denokala.com>

<https://denokala.com>

<https://denokala.com>

<https://denokala.com>

<https://denokala.com>

<https://denokala.com>

<https://denokala.com>

<https://denokala.com>

<https://denokala.com>

<https://denokala.com>

<https://denokala.com>

<https://denokala.com>

<https://denokala.com>

<https://denokala.com>

<https://denokala.com>

<https://denokala.com>

<https://denokala.com>

<https://denokala.com>

<https://denokala.com>

<https://denokala.com>

<https://denokala.com>

<https://denokala.com>

<https://denokala.com>

<https://denokala.com>

<https://denokala.com>

- 2 In general terms, showing affection for your partner in public is acceptable in our society, although of course some people are more reserved than others and prefer not to show their feelings so openly.
- 3 Many people would agree that if you need to show off, you are seeking attention because you lack confidence.
- 4 Nowadays, travelling to far-off places is much more common than in the past, particularly for the young. People share those experiences – mostly on social media – but it's not considered boastful. In fact, most people are eager to hear about expensive holidays!
- 5 I think we used to be kinder and more friendly towards strangers and foreigners in the past. Nowadays, because of the rise in crime rates, most people are wary of strangers.
- 6 I'm afraid that in my country we are notorious for not being punctual! Therefore, we are used to being kept waiting.
- 7 Not all shop assistants are genuinely friendly, but some customers can be really rude and tiresome.
- 8 Most politicians are perceived as lacking integrity, so they are not trusted.

Unit 17

1	NOUN	ADJECTIVE
	arrogance	arrogant
	confidence	confident
	efficiency	efficient
	charm	charming
	motivation	motivated
	potential	potential
	knowledge	knowledgeable
	idiot	idiotic

- 2 1 S 3 S 5 S 7 D
2 S 4 D 6 D 8 S
- 3 1 well informed 5 struggle
2 straightforward 6 ridiculous
3 immature 7 timid
4 efficient 8 capable
- 4 1 What did you make of Aaron?
2 Josie struggled to explain what she meant.
3 Lawrence was lacking in charm.
4 I didn't take to Rollo at first.
5 Parminder came over/across very well in the interview.
6 Rupert struck me as capable.
7 I think that Ariana has potential.
8 Vicky didn't seem (to be) very motivated.
- 5 possible answers:
1 I'm well informed about politics and economics.
2 I think that people who are conscientious are very important, and we need people like that in our schools, health service and industry.
3 If people are charming towards me, I'm usually charming back to them.
4 I feel confident when I am in control and know what I want to say.
5 It's sometimes a struggle for me to remember people's names when I first meet them, so I can seem rude when I meet them again.
6 If I meet someone who is arrogant, I spend as little time with them as possible.
7 If someone doesn't take me seriously, I don't worry too much. It's their problem, not mine.
8 I don't take to people who are arrogant and immature.
9 In an interview situation, I think I probably come across as quite well informed, but perhaps a bit shy and lacking in confidence.

- 10 If someone says something ridiculous in an interview, I think it could be because they're nervous or don't know what they're talking about.

Unit 18

1	1 P	4 P	7 N	10 N
	2 N	5 N	8 P	11 P
	3 N	6 P	9 P/N	12 N

- 2 1 astounded 5 ecstatic
2 over the moon 6 in tears
3 heartbroken 7 delighted
4 disgusted 8 desperate
- 3 1 astounded/astonished 6 delighted/ecstatic/
2 shocked thrilled
3 desperate 7 tears
4 devastated 8 disgusted
5 ashamed

- 4 reveal; vulnerable; anxiety; worsen;
severe; disclose; psychological; intense; anxious;
psychology; psychologist; suppress

- 5 1 psychology 5 severe
2 reveal 6 handling
3 vulnerable 7 intense
4 worsened 8 anxiety

- 6 1 handle 6 depression
2 vulnerable 7 anxious
3 psychologists 8 bottle up
4 suppress 9 reveal
5 intense 10 psychology

- 7 possible answers:

- 1 The best ones handle stress well. Some athletes try to handle stress by taking drugs, and that's a terrible idea.
- 2 I don't think they should show that they're vulnerable, but I do think they should apologize for mistakes and be prepared to change their ideas where necessary.
- 3 I think psychologists have been looking at the effects of social media on how we feel about ourselves and communicate with each other, as well as the effects of internet porn (pornography) on young people.
- 4 I think at work, it's sensible to suppress your emotions sometimes. You can't say how you feel all the time.
- 5 They need to reach out and try to meet people – join a club or talk to their neighbours, for instance. It's not easy to solve, though.
- 6 I think doctors often suffer from depression, as well as people on low wages whose lives are difficult.
- 7 Breathe deeply; sit quietly and relax; do yoga or go for a run.
- 8 Yes, I think it does: your heart and blood pressure can suffer.
- 9 Yes, to friends or family.
- 10 No, I haven't ever studied psychology.

Unit 19

1	1 N	3 N	5 N	7 P	9 P
	2 P	4 P	6 N	8 N	10 N

- 2 1 regret
2 dislike
3 blame
4 strain
5 respect
6 stare
7 forgave
8 stuck

<https://denokala.com>

<https://denokala.com>

<https://denokala.com>

<https://denokala.com>

<https://denokala.com>

<https://denokala.com>

<https://denokala.com>

Unit 38

- | | | | |
|---|----------------------|----|------------------|
| 1 | 1 spacious-late | 4 | entrance-camera |
| | 2 detached-flat | 5 | mortgage-damage |
| | 3 staircase-care | 6 | overall-saw |
| 2 | 1 basically | 6 | bonus |
| | 2 staircase | 7 | overall |
| | 3 exterior; interior | 8 | decorating |
| | 4 largely | 9 | spacious |
| | 5 mortgage | 10 | put in |
| 3 | 1 terraced; | 4 | take out |
| | semi-detached | 5 | decorating |
| | 2 hall | 6 | put in / install |
| | 3 plan | | |

4 possible answers, from the Czech Republic:

- Yes, especially terraced houses. They've been here for centuries: the old ones are usually single-storey buildings forming a line along the main street in a village and having a large garden or even an orchard behind the house; the modern ones are higher, often two-storey buildings, sometimes with an attic and a tiny front and a small back garden where the families relax and enjoy barbecues and meals in the summer. Semi-detached houses are less common, but we do have them, especially on the outskirts of cities. Their bonus is more privacy than in the terraced houses but, of course, the prices are usually higher.
- No, not really. The entrance hall is mostly small, even tiny, with a lot of doors and is simply furnished with a wall rack and a shoe rack or cupboard.
- Open-plan design is not very popular in our homes. In most homes, there's one large room, which serves as a living-room, dining-room and a kitchen, and a number of smaller rooms which provide privacy to the family members. Open-plan flats are usually very modern and spacious and are often built in reconstructed areas of big cities. They are either offered for rent or for sale, but because of the high prices, the buyer normally applies for a mortgage.
- Yes, a lot of people do, especially young people. But to get the mortgage you need to prove you have a permanent job and the amount of the mortgage depends on how much you earn.
- Some people still do the decorating themselves – either because they enjoy doing things on their own, or because of the cost. But nowadays, more and more people have the decorating, and cleaning afterwards, done for them.
- It depends, of course. If a young couple buy a home, they often need to save before they can make some bigger changes. A lot of bathrooms and kitchens are installed in old high-rise blocks of flats, which are in a somewhat dilapidated condition. Sometimes the young people move into a home which used to be owned by their grandparents, so they refurbish the whole place. Also, a lot of people decide to replace their old kitchen or bathroom when their family situation changes, for example when they look after an old relative or their children leave home, or they decide to extend their living area because a child marries and/or has a baby.

5 rental, attic, landlord, extend, unfurnished, flatmate, contract, deposit

- | | | | |
|---|-------------|---|-------------------------------|
| 6 | 1 rental | 5 | storage |
| | 2 Both | 6 | lease |
| | 3 Both | 7 | sign |
| | 4 flatmate | 8 | extend |
| 7 | 1 contract | 6 | furnished |
| | 2 flatmates | 7 | rental property |
| | 3 storage | 8 | storey (also possible: floor) |
| | 4 deposit | | |
| | 5 extension | | |

8 possible answers, from the Czech Republic:

- Yes, it is, especially in big cities. People usually want to buy a flat or house if they believe it's for a lifetime. If they come to the city to work or study, they usually rent a flat. Young people often live in rented flats until they start a family, then they look for a place to buy. And, of course, there are people who can never afford to buy a place of their own.
- In the past, almost all the flats offered for rent were unfurnished. But with the changing lifestyle, a lot of flats, especially in big cities, are offered furnished and with all modern conveniences.
- No, the length of contracts varies. It depends on the renter and landlord's agreement. The contract can be signed for a few months and for many years. But included in the contract, there are always conditions under which any of the parties can terminate the contract, and also a common condition is a deposit of three months' rent which can be used to cover the cost of any damage caused by the renter.
- Yes, usually they are, on condition the renter has caused no problems and the landlord has no other plans with the flat, of course.

Unit 39

- | | | | |
|---|--|-----|-----------------------|
| 1 | 1 pond | 5 | Both are possible. |
| | 2 Both are possible. | 6 | nature |
| | 3 scenery | 7 | wildlife |
| | 4 tropical | 8 | countryside |
| 2 | Frogs live in ponds.
You keep tools in a shed.
Birds build nests.
Nature consists of all kinds of wildlife.
Trees have roots. | | |
| 3 | 1 scenery | 6 | species |
| | 2 roots | 7 | slope |
| | 3 woods | 8 | tropical |
| | 4 acquire | 9 | greenhouse |
| | 5 intended | 10 | hollow |
| 4 | 1 B | 3 G | 5 B |
| | 2 G | 4 B | 6 G |
| | | | 7 G |
| | | | 8 B |
| 5 | 1 spade | 5 | compost to the soil |
| | 2 put my feet up | 6 | lawnmower |
| | 3 mow the lawn | 7 | hedge round the field |
| | 4 cut back this bush (cut this bush back) | 8 | some weeding |
| 6 | 1 to make the soil more fertile
2 It makes the ground wet and more difficult to dig.
3 Yes, because the weeds are not wanted and can make the garden very untidy.
4 Perhaps once a week or once a fortnight, depending on the season and the weather.
5 Cut them back.
6 To sit on and relax/put your feet up.
7 Yes, otherwise it will probably get too big.
8 Cleaning tools, cleaning the shed, tidying the garden, etc. | | |

Unit 40

- | | | | |
|---|----------------|---|-----------|
| 1 | 1 scroll | 5 | install |
| | 2 icon | 6 | prompt |
| | 3 launch | 7 | settings |
| | 4 browse | 8 | storage |
| 2 | 1 key sth (in) | 5 | browser |
| | 2 tap | 6 | storage |
| | 3 switch | 7 | scroll up |
| | 4 launch | | |

- 3** 1 installed 5 scroll
2 browsing 6 settings
3 prompt 7 launched
4 tap 8 icon
- 4** 1 D 3 S 5 D
2 S 4 S 6 S
- 5** 1 No, you can't. It's too badly damaged.
2 You turn it off and then on again immediately.
3 Yes, you are.
4 It has many components.
5 A mouse is an external component.
6 No, it's very unwise. Without a backup, you risk losing all of your data.
7 Yes, it does.
- 6** 1 freeze 3 damp 5 update 7 back up
2 antivirus 4 downwards 6 plug 8 unplug
- 7 possible answers:**
1 My old computer used to freeze a lot, so I got a new one which doesn't.
2 Yes, I have – it's very important.
3 Not very often. I know I should do it more often than I do.
4 I don't think about it – I just wipe it! I didn't know you had to wipe it downwards.
5 I update my software every time the device prompts me to do so.
6 I usually plug it in when I get home in the evening.
7 My data updates automatically all the time.
8 Very occasionally I shut it down, but I think I only unplug it when I go away on holiday.

Unit 41

- 1** climax relatively
underestimate priority
opponent opposition
contender overestimate
- 2** 1 quite easy 5 very important
2 a difficult game 6 judge them well
3 a team you are playing against 7 at the end
4 No, a contender is somebody taking part who might/could win it. 8 many teams.
- 3** 1 opponents; tough (also possible: challenging) 5 relatively
2 priority 6 contenders
3 underestimate 7 home; away
4 League 8 reaching
9 titles
- 4** 1 qualification 4 domination
2 victory 5 transformation
3 inconsistent 6 consistency
- 5** 1 P 3 N 5 N 7 N 9 P
2 P 4 P 6 P 8 N 10 P
- 6** 1 chance 6 consistency
2 pitch 7 qualify
3 boost 8 pressure; sort
4 row 9 defeats
5 throw 10 stand a chance
- 7 possible answers:**
I support Chelsea. They have done quite well this season, but there have been too many home defeats and draws against teams we really should dominate easily. We were a bit inconsistent, and the manager was under pressure for a lot of the time because Chelsea supporters always expect a lot. In the end, though, we qualified for the Champions League, so that's not bad.

Unit 42

- 1** 1 D 3 S 5 S 7 D 9 D
2 S 4 D 6 S 8 D 10 S
- 2** *Rhythm, tune, catchy, sing along, melody, chorus, hit single and lyrics* are associated with music.
Genre can be used in connection with music, but also with the other arts, e.g. literature, painting.
- 3** 1 determination 4 criterion
2 complex 5 encounter
3 irrelevant 6 unforgettable
- 4** 1 catchy (also possible: memorable)
2 tune (also possible: melody)
3 hit singles
4 chorus
5 lyrics
6 complicated/complex
7 relate to
8 rhythm
- 5** 1 criteria 6 engage
2 tune/melody (also possible: chorus) 7 memorable (also possible: unforgettable)
3 genre 8 relevance
4 encountered 9 determine
5 relevant; relate 10 surface
- 6 possible answers, from Argentina:**
1 I think that, as with all art forms, what matters is how we relate to the piece – what the song means to us personally. There are many reasons why a song might be considered great – it might be the rhythm, the lyrics, the melody, or a combination of all three.
2 A great pop song should be relevant to the listeners, which means that audiences can personally engage with the feelings evoked in the song. That is why most hits deal with basic human emotions, like love in all its forms.
3 As I'm not a musician myself I tend to focus on the lyrics.
4 I'm always humming or singing along to my favourite songs.
5 I think the sentiment behind a song is what can make a song truly popular. But of course there are exceptions to this – some very repetitive and simple songs have become hits.
6 I would say most songs by The Beatles have stood the test of time. If I had to write a list, I would include:
We can work it out (The Beatles)
I guess that's why they call it the Blues (Elton John)
Under my skin (Frank Sinatra)
Suspicious Minds (Elvis)
There must be an angel (Eurythmics)
Land of Confusion (Genesis)
Yesterday (The Beatles)

Unit 43

- 1** actor: fabulous, classic, unanimous
play: sensational, praise
far: cast
hair: scare
caught: applause, audience
theatre: adapt
- 2** 1 set 6 adaptation
2 death 7 ghost
3 effects 8 applaud
4 Both are possible. 9 tension
5 classic
- 3** 1 to death / stiff 5 praise
2 adaptation 6 applause
3 cast 7 classic
4 unanimous 8 tense

Unit 47

- 1 1 S 3 S 5 D 7 S
2 D 4 D 6 D 8 S
- 2 1 danger 3 natural 5 verge
2 out 4 in 6 species
- 3 1 out; extinct 6 endangered; instance
2 cleared; deforestation 7 conservation
3 extinction; decline 8 declining; die
4 regions 9 pointing
5 habitat 10 considered
- 4 1 ~~divested~~ diverted 6 ~~over~~ after
2 ~~feed~~ breed 7 ~~decorational~~
3 ~~puts~~ poses decorative
4 ~~civic~~ civil 8 ~~threaten~~ threat
5 ~~kill~~ wipe
- 5 1 civil 5 up
2 horn 6 poses
3 divert 7 out
4 after 8 threat
- 6 1 likelihood 5 territorial
2 territory 6 tiger poacher
3 poaching 7 breed
4 under threat 8 ended up

Unit 48

- 1 1 D 3 D 5 D 7 D 9 D
2 S 4 D 6 S 8 D
- 2 revolutionary 3 diagnose; diagnostic
restriction transplant
surgical infect; infectious
vaccination; vaccinate
- 3 1 No 3 Yes 5 Yes 7 Yes
2 No 4 No 6 No 8 Yes
- 4 1 theatre 6 procedure
2 advances 7 donor/transplant
3 supplements 8 minerals
4 era 9 cure
5 rate 10 medicine
- 5 1 eradicated / wiped out; wiped out / eradicated
2 restricted; transplant
3 vaccinate; vaccine
4 conventional; advances
5 infection
6 operate; procedure/operation; confined
7 revolutionary/radical; resume
8 enabled

Unit 49

- 1 1 S 3 S 5 D 7 S
2 D 4 S 6 D 8 S
- 2 1 emigration 5 Both are possible.
2 seek 6 fled
3 ethnic 7 Both are possible.
4 refuge 8 Both are possible.
- 3 1 There's no limit on the number of people given political asylum in this country.
2 Racial and sexual discrimination is against the law in matters of employment.
3 Economic migration to richer countries has existed for centuries.
4 There are over 2,000 refugees seeking political asylum in this country.

- 5 Nearly half a million people were forced to flee their homes during the civil war, and many of them took refuge in the mountains, away from the fighting.
6 My neighbour has always had a prejudice against people whose skin is a different colour.
7 Asians only form a small minority within the population.
8 There has been a lot of racial tension between different ethnic groups.

4 culture shock, live in peace, religious faith, have no desire to do sth, have a part to play, country of origin

5 1 for towards 4 stereoscope stereotype
2 in partly 5 integrity integration
3 nostalgic nostalgia 6 natural native

6 1 native 7 for
2 faith 8 integrate
3 shock 9 hostile
4 part 10 peace
5 stereotypical 11 nostalgic
6 desire

Unit 50

- 1 ideology 3 opposition
ideological extremism
capitalism associate
conservative association
status quo distribute
oppose distribution
- 2 ideological 3 liberalism; liberal
conservative; association; associated
conservative extremism; extreme
socialist; socialist distribution
- 3 1 F – A communist economy ...
2 T
3 T
4 F – A liberal believes in economic freedom and gradual political change.
5 F – The Conservative party in Britain believes in capitalism.
6 F – Communists believe that everyone should own the means of production.
7 F – Extremists tend to have extreme beliefs.
8 T
- 4 1 right-wing 6 In the centre
2 wealthy 7 the opposition
3 opposed to it 8 communist (also possible: socialist)
4 status quo
5 moderate
- 5 1 distribution 7 extent
2 favour 8 prominent
3 ownership 9 partly
4 associate 10 association/
5 maintain connection
6 wealthy

6 possible answers, from Hungary:

- 1 We have many different parties showing the whole spectrum of political views from right-wing to left-wing. Fortunately, extremist parties are not among the major political players and do not have seats in the Parliament.
2 It depends on the particular issue we are talking about. If I find it necessary, I cannot refrain from calling/voting for radical change.
3 In many cases maintaining the status quo would be quite boring. When it comes to politics, I can imagine situations where radically changing the existing order is the only way out.

- 4 I am not that much into politics so I cannot really say. What I find unacceptable is when people criticize the existing government just because they are in power. I believe in studying a given issue from as many aspects as possible and forming an informed opinion based on facts rather than on my emotions.
- 5 Yes, I strongly believe in personal and economic freedom, and am quite tolerant towards people whose views differ from mine.
- 6 Absolutely, I always have my ID card and my driving licence on me.
- 7 I live in a big city – Budapest – so we have practically all types of public transport. The most common are bus, tram and the underground, but you can also take a suburban train or cycle around on the many newly-built cycle paths. The latest craze is the electric scooter but, personally, I find it rather dangerous.

Unit 51

- 1

1 resident	5 allocate
2 ensure	6 manifesto
3 voluntary	7 councillor
4 council	8 volunteer
- 2

1 manifest manifesto	5 for of
2 to in	6 out up
3 make take	7 assure ensure
4 volunteer voluntary	8 grand grant
- 3

1 councillors; behalf	6 resident; citizen
2 volunteers; sector	7 green
3 have	8 allocated
4 stick/stand; take	9 ensure
5 grant	10 council
- 4

1 budget / funding	4 profile
2 committee / authorities	5 All are possible.
3 spokesperson / chairman	6 All are possible.
	7 mayor/head
	8 chairs / sits on
- 5

1 police	6 committees
2 eligible OR ineligible	7 mayor
3 chair	8 heads
4 authority/authorities	9 profile
5 budget	10 funding
- 6 *possible answers, from the Czech Republic:*
 - 1 Yes. Each town has a mayor. In big cities they are called Lord Mayor. Elections take place every four years. In these local elections, people vote for the future members of the council. Then, at their first meeting, the elected councillors choose the mayor. He/She is usually the head of the party who won the majority of seats and his/her deputies are heads of the coalition parties.
 - 2 Yes, it is. The bigger the town, the more influence the mayor has.
 - 3 The mayor cannot decide much on their own. They always act in compliance with the decisions of the town council. They take decisions on the town's development, approve its budget, and establish and abolish organizations such as the local police, technical services which look after the cleaning of the town, collection and sorting of rubbish, parks and other green spaces, cultural centres, and sports centres and facilities. They are also responsible for kindergartens and basic schools, and a lot more. The mayor is the one to sign the most important documents and bears the responsibility for matters they refer to.

Unit 52

- 1 free of charge, health care, clinical trial, strictly confidential, cosmetic surgery
- 2

1 specialist	5 if; care
2 confidential	6 register; enrolled
2 surgery	7 refer; specialist
4 prescribe	8 participants; trial
- 3

1 care	5 specialist
2 register	6 referred
3 prescription	7 confidential
4 of charge	8 suspect
- 4 *possible answers, from Poland:*

Yes, you do need to register with a GP.
Your GP refers you to a specialist
You get a free prescription for some drugs but some are paid for. People who are insured get some discount. I also think you get some discount if you are a pensioner.
When you suspect that a doctor has made a mistake and it is too late to have it fixed by him/her, you can sue the doctor for negligence, damages, etc.
In order to become a participant in a clinical trial, you need to be referred by your GP or a specialist.
I think in certain cases you can have cosmetic surgery for free, e.g. when it is treatment after an accident or an operation.
Yes, all medical records are strictly confidential.
- 5

1 feet	6 kept
2 no	7 Both are possible.
3 admitted	8 Both are possible.
4 old self	9 recuperation
5 Both are possible.	10 dedicated
- 6

1 no notice of me	5 recuperate/convalesce
2 me informed	6 miserable
3 off my feet	7 well-being
4 real self	8 dedicated
- 7

1 admitted; ward	5 junior
2 kept	6 absolute
3 rushed	7 convalescence
4 well-being; prime	8 discharged
- 8 *possible answers, from Poland:*
 - 1 Yes.
 - 2 Yes, I think they are.
 - 3 Yes, very much so.
 - 4 Yes, according to the law.
 - 5 That depends on the hospital, but probably on the whole it is true.
 - 6 Yes, they do.
 - 7 It may differ from case to case but, on the whole, that is the case, usually.
 - 8 No, patients (or their families) will have to buy their medicines from a pharmacy.

Unit 53

- 1

<u>detain</u>	<u>invalid</u>	<u>remand</u>
suspect v	<u>magistrate</u>	<u>convict</u>
suspect n	<u>custody</u>	<u>acquit</u>
<u>offence</u>	solicitor	<u>constable</u>
- 2

1 in	3 with	5 of
2 for	4 of	6 to
- 3

1 constable/sergeant/inspector	4 custody
2 offence	5 grant
3 issue/grant/refuse	6 acquit

- 4** 1 a magistrate OR a judge
2 the police
3 a solicitor
4 a judge OR a magistrate
5 the person awaiting trial / the prisoner
6 the police officer who arrests the suspect
7 a police constable
8 an inspector
9 the chief constable
10 a judge
- 5** 1 rank
2 warrant
3 remanded
- 6** 1 about
2 constable/officer
3 detained
4 custody
5 suspect
6 solicitor
- 4 procedure(s); valid
5 suspect; offence
6 caution
- 7 charged
8 offences
9 magistrate
10 granted
11 convicted
12 sentenced

Unit 54

- 1** abolish
abolition
capital punishment
deterrent
rehabilitate
rehabilitation
- reoffender
occupational
hazard
justify
justification
justifiable
- 2** 1 up
2 me as a friend
3 capital punishment for some crimes
4 justifiable (also possible: justified)
5 imprisonment
6 abolition of the law
7 occupational hazard
8 reoffenders
9 revenge (on him)
10 crisis
- 3** 1 rehabilitate
2 reoffend
3 deterrent
4 capital
- 5 abolish
6 justification; revenge
7 crisis
8 justice; justice
- 4 possible answers:**
- I don't know the answer to that, but I think we could rehabilitate more offenders than we do at present.
 - There are many possible reasons: not enough support from friends, family or the state; the person can't get a job and is short of money, mixing with the wrong kind of people; crime becomes a way of life, etc.
 - Clearly it isn't a very effective deterrent if a significant number reoffend.
 - No, I have never believed in capital punishment.
 - I would like to abolish solitary confinement.
 - The answer is probably 'no', but I can understand people wanting revenge; it's human nature in some situations and circumstances.
 - Yes, I believe it is. I think we currently lock up more people in the UK than any other European country. The prisons cannot cope with the numbers; they are overcrowded.
 - I believe in the need for the criminal justice system, but justice – the fair treatment of people – is not easy to achieve.
- 5** 1 confinement
2 Both are possible.
3 assessment
4 Both are possible.
- 5 Both are possible.
6 Both are possible.
7 Both are possible.
8 institution

- 6** 1 therapy
2 segregation
3 catering
4 cells
5 consent
- 6 proportion
7 mutual
8 principle
9 confinement
10 exclusively

7 possible answer:

I think we should have more prisons based on these principles. It wouldn't work for everyone and perhaps not a majority, but it could be successful in rehabilitating a good proportion of offenders because it works on the principle that if you treat people like decent human beings, there is a good chance they will then behave like decent human beings.

Unit 55

- 1** 1 Encompass is different.
2 These three are pronounced like *bit*: civilian, encompass, enlisted.
These three are pronounced like *bgt*: deadly, differentiate, weapon.
3 The three that are different are: comprise, diverse, missile.
- 2** unarmed combat
the vast majority
the armed forces
lethal weapon
military service
- serve your country
make a distinction
be in command
military aircraft
- 3** 1 vast
2 military
3 consists
4 fundamental
5 combat
6 diverse
7 guard
8 enlisted
- 9 deadly
10 distinguish/
differentiate
11 encompasses
12 compulsory
13 commands
14 (a large military)
operation
- 4** 1 armed
2 made up
3 command
4 serve
5 reserves
- 6 diverse
7 branch
8 weapons
9 comprise/
consist of
- 5 possible answers, from India:**
- Yes, India has got a professional military in place. The Indian Armed Forces consist of three uniformed services – the Indian Army, the Indian Navy and the Indian Air Force.
 - Yes, India has a reserve army.
 - Yes, India has many institutions that provide military service.
 - Yes, the police are usually armed in India.
 - No, I have never stood next to a tank.
No, I have never owned or used a deadly weapon.
No, I have never been in a professional army.
Yes, I have flown in a helicopter a few times.
No, I have never dropped from a parachute.
No, I have never enrolled for military service.

Unit 56

- 1** 1 D
2 D
3 S
- 4 D
5 D
6 S
- 7 S
8 S
- 2** 1 B
2 B
3 G
4 B
5 G
6 G
7 G
8 G (for the army) B (for the criminals)

- 3 1 f 3 j 5 h 7 e 9 d
2 c 4 a 6 g 8 b 10 i

- 4 1 New arms deal
2 Government pledges/vows to back new hospital
3 Go-ahead for rail scheme
4 Company chief axed
5 Boost for big banks (also possible: Backing for big banks)
6 Latest statistics a blow for the economy
7 Kidnappers demand ransom
8 Ministers urge delay
9 Motorcyclist cleared of child's death
10 PM rules out further tax cuts
- 5 1 Blast wrecks new shopping centre
2 Senators rule out more international aid
3 Shareholders bid to axe chairman
4 Officers foil prison escape plot
5 Bid to change law on hunting (OR Bid to change hunting law)
6 New food alert (OR New alert about certain foods)

Unit 57

- 1 mass; blank; precious; instant; specialist; opening
- 2 1 D 3 S 5 S 7 S
2 S 4 D 6 S 8 D
- 3 1 blank 6 talk
2 opening 7 pace
3 tone 8 assumption
4 assume 9 part
5 quoting/citing
- 4 1 I went to the opening of the exhibition.
2 You must grab the reader's attention.
3 I can recognize his style instantly.
4 It was a mistake on my part.
5 We must leave now, otherwise we'll be late.
6 There is mass unemployment
7 Did you quote/cite her?
8 Freedom is precious.
- 5 1 publication 4 commodity
2 specialist 5 opening
3 mass 6 Quotes
- 6 1 It determines the style of writing.
2 You can assume a greater level of knowledge on the part of your readers.
3 Don't use difficult words and long sentences, but don't talk down to your readers.
4 The most precious commodity is space, and it is precious because it is always in short supply.
5 It has to engage the reader instantly; summarize the story, and state why you are writing it; set the tone for the rest of the story.
6 Quotes should be short, otherwise the story may lose pace and direction.
- 7 possible answers for the UK:
The most specialist newspaper is *The Financial Times*.
Specialist magazines include *The Spectator* and *The New Statesman*.
Mass-market papers include *The Sun*, *The Mirror* and *The Daily Mail*.
The Prime Minister of the United Kingdom, the President of the US, and famous celebrities such as sportsmen and women are commonly quoted in newspapers and on TV.

Unit 58

- 1 concerning, debate, conflict, divide, contest
(Note that the verb contest is stressed differently.), turnout, negotiate, referendum, electorate
- 2 1 concerning/regarding
2 a narrow majority
3 has divided
4 electorate
5 turnout
6 negotiate / take part in negotiations
- 3 1 referendum 4 debate
2 will 5 closely; contest
3 negotiation(s) 6 conflict
- 4 1 A referendum
2 It was concerning Britain's continued membership of the EU.
3 It deeply divided opinion in the nation.
4 A narrow majority in favour of leaving the EU.
5 72% of the total electorate
6 There was a long period of negotiation.
- 5 1 D 3 D 5 S 7 S
2 D 4 S 6 D 8 D
- 6 1 govern 6 multiple
2 cooperate 7 coalition
3 advocate 8 dominance/dominant
4 compromise 9 consensus
5 philosophy
- 7 1 two or more political groups working together
2 everyone
3 a lot of control
4 for it
5 more powerful
6 give up some of the things you wanted for a solution both sides can accept
- 8 1 multiple 5 cooperate
2 compromise 6 core; philosophy
3 govern 7 advocate
4 dominant 8 coalition

Unit 59

- 1 rebellion, minimise, protester, uphold, demonstrators, avert, erect, occupy, demonstration, meanwhile, protest, disobedience
- 2 demonstration, disruption, rebellion, disobedience, resistance, occupy
- 3 1 T
2 F – If someone upholds the law, they obey it.
3 F – If you avert an accident, you prevent it from happening.
4 F – If you tolerate something, you allow it to continue.
5 F – A building which is occupied contains protesters or people who are currently living or working in it.
6 T
7 F – If you minimize something, you reduce it to the lowest possible level.
8 F – A rebellion is opposition to authority by an organized group.
- 4 1 barriers 5 resistance
2 disobedience 6 movement
3 activists/ 7 called on
demonstrators/
protesters 8 staging
4 disruption 9 entire
10 tolerate

- 5 1 like human beings
2 have called on activists
3 to minimize the disruption
4 In connection with the events
5 have been occupied
6 to avert any potential danger
7 a group of activists/demonstrators/protesters
8 avert disruption
9 no longer put up with
10 who erected the barriers

- 6 1 movement
2 mission
3 disobedience
4 avert
5 occupying
6 tolerated
7 activists/
demonstrators/
protesters
- 8 demonstration/
protest
9 activists/
demonstrators/
protesters
10 calling
11 beings
12 stage

Unit 60

- 1 Evacuate is the exception.
- 2 1 collapsed
2 numerous
3 evacuated
4 trapped inside their homes
5 strike/hit
- 3 1 strikes/hits
2 collapse
3 trapped
4 evacuation
5 rescue/save
6 maintain
- 4 devastate firefighter casualty precaution deliberate
suspect assessment courage courageous intensity
intentional suspicion
- 5 1 suspect
2 intensity
3 assessment
4 courageous
- 6 1 blaze
2 deliberately
3 brigade
4 bravery (also possible: courage)
- 7 1 casualties
2 brigade
3 intense
4 praised
5 assess
6 suspicion
- 6 6 death toll
7 considerable
8 rescued
9 scale
10 significantly
- 7 tremors
8 considerable/
significant
9 scale
10 toll
- 5 devastation
6 precaution
7 casualties
8 tackling
- 5 assessment
6 praise
7 suspicious
8 intense

Unit 61

- 1 1 S 3 D 5 D
2 D 4 S 6 S
- 2 1 formally (Note that the most natural word order is: *They formally announced it.*)
2 confirmation
3 drowned
- 3 1 acre
2 fragments
3 formally
4 floating
- 4 floated
5 fragments
6 estate
7 assistance
8 notify
- 5 notify
6 confirmation
7 lord
8 drowned

- 4 possible answers, from China:
1 Acre and hectare are commonly used to describe an area of land in our language. For smaller areas, we often use square foot and square metre.
2 We don't have any large estates in my city, Hong Kong.
3 There is no equivalent of a lord in our country.
4 Hong Kong is divided into districts. Our country is divided into provinces, and in each province there are many cities and counties.
5 We should call the emergency line if someone dies at home of natural causes. Police then come to confirm the case. And an ambulance is sent to collect the body and provide all the necessary assistance.

- 5 regulator network edit distress in the public
interest live stream commentator prejudice delicate
balancing act
- 6 network, broadcaster, clip, edit, live stream
(You can have a media regulator, but regulators also operate throughout other business and industries.)
- 7 a public library; a balancing act; a media regulator; in the public interest; a film clip; racial prejudice

- 8 1 clips
2 broadcast
3 distress
4 edited
5 live stream
(also possible: live broadcast)
- 6 public; delicate
7 prejudice
8 commentator;
regulator

Unit 62

- 1 1 revealing, exposing
2 carried out, conducted
3 pry into
4 All three are possible.
5 contrasts with
- 6 emerge
7 be revealed, emerge
8 Coverage
9 findings, revelations
10 deserve
- 2 1 carried
2 revealed
3 findings
4 deserve
- 5 emerged
6 eye
7 contrast
8 privacy
- 3 1 tabloid
2 prying; public
- 3 privacy
4 celebrity
- possible answers:
1 Yes, we do.
2 Yes, they do it all the time.
3 I think the families of celebrities deserve privacy, but it is difficult for people in the public eye to avoid publicity and keep their privacy. There are times when celebrities actually enjoy being in the public eye.
4 The advantages are often wealth, status and being able to enjoy privileges that ordinary people don't have. The disadvantages are the lack of privacy, and that is sometimes accompanied by stress.

- 4 1 D 3 S 5 D 7 S
2 D 4 D 6 D 8 D

- 5 1 Allegedly, he has lost all his money.
2 They acted in her defence. / They rallied to her defence.
3 They say she has a fortune / is worth a fortune.
4 Jason has custody of his son.
5 He's been through hell recently.
6 She's had support from (her) fellow workers.

- 6 1 rumour 9 custody
2 allegation 10 fellow
3 scandal 11 rally
4 rock 12 defend
5 hell
6 alleging
7 rehab
8 fortune

Unit 63

- 1 severe; direct; remaining; mysterious; stuck; rapid; delicate
- 2 1 tip 6 do
2 Both are possible. 7 Both are possible.
3 severe 8 remaining
4 mysterious 9 ever since
5 Both are possible.
- 3 1 bear / put up with 5 dare
(also possible in formal 6 mysterious
English: endure) 7 rapid/speedy recovery
2 delicate 8 dare
3 dare 9 directly
4 (ever) since 10 stuck
- 4 1 S 3 D 5 S 7 D
2 D 4 D 6 S 8 S
- 5 1 kill you 3 see 5 fail
2 die 4 chance 6 clearly
- 6 1 panic 5 stay put
2 swamp 6 stranded
3 spotted 7 lower limit
4 tale 8 any chances

Unit 64

- 1 1 D 3 S 5 S 7 D 9 S
2 D 4 D 6 D 8 D 10 D
- 2 apprentice handyman executive entrepreneur
lucrative librarian electrician nowadays
civil servant vacancy bodyguard self-employed
- 3 1 jeweller 8 plumber
2 handyman 9 librarian
3 civil servant 10 butcher
4 barman/barmaid 11 accountant
5 apprentice (plumber) 12 housewife/
6 bodyguard househusband
7 carpenter
- 4 (Answers may vary from country to country.)
In the UK, these jobs are generally quite well-paid:
electrician, civil servant, accountant
These jobs can be quite well paid but often they
aren't: manual worker, librarian, casual work
These jobs aren't well paid: barman/barmaid,
apprentice, housewife
- 5 1 seeking 7 vacancies
2 senior 8 executive
3 lucrative 9 tough
4 nowadays 10 incentive
5 manual 11 post/position; vacant
6 employed 12 civil service
- 6 possible answers:
1 Yes, I used to do manual work in my holidays when I was at university, and I've been self-employed for a number of years.
2 I think it would be fun to be a handyman: working for yourself, doing varied jobs, and often spending time solving problems for other people.
3 I am self-employed and prefer it that way.
4 I don't need an incentive to work hard if I enjoy what I'm doing. If I didn't enjoy my job, then I would need incentives, such as a good salary or long holidays.
5 No, I'm not very good at it, but I quite like it for short periods of time.
6 Yes, I think it might be fun.
7 I think they're a great idea, and it would help young people if there were more apprenticeship schemes in this country.

- 8 No, I don't think I would be happy only doing housework unless it was for a very short period of time.
9 I wouldn't mind a low-status job if it was temporary, but I would be less happy if I had a permanent job which had low status.

Unit 65

- 1 qualifications human resources
administration finance
manufacturing recruitment
market research insurance
(also possible: market research)
- 2 1 market research
2 human resources
3 retail
4 insurance
5 manufacturing
6 administration
7 finance
8 recruitment / HR / human resources
- 3 1 registered 4 sector
2 qualification(s) 5 manufacturing
3 finance
- 4 possible answers:
My experience has been in retail. I've worked for Marks & Spencer now for 15 years. Initially, I was a shop-floor manager for a number of years, and then I retrained and now work in human resources, where I spend a lot of my time looking at ways for other staff members to move on in their careers and develop new skills. I find human resources a very rewarding sector to work in.
- 5 1 D 6 S
2 S 7 D
3 D 8 S
4 D 9 S
5 D (They might be the same, but not necessarily.) 10 D
11 D
12 S
- 6 1 challenging 8 resign/quit
2 department 9 appointed
3 prospects 10 promotion
4 promoted 11 redundant
5 elsewhere 12 quit (also possible: resign)
6 unemployed
7 fire/sack
- 7 possible answers:
1 True
2 Not true
3 True (I think, so but I'm not sure.)
4 True
5 Not true (at the moment)
6 Not true (I was once out of work for nearly six months.)
7 True (I don't think I could do it.)
8 True (Probably, but again I'm not sure.)
9 Not true (I wasn't sure I would like the job when I was appointed.)
10 Sometimes true and sometimes not. (People are sometimes promoted because they are talented, and sometimes promoted because they are the most senior member of staff.)
11 Not true. I have never been made redundant.
12 Not true. I have never resigned because I didn't like my job.

Unit 66

- 1 freelance
accountable
insight
- 2 1 encountered
2 degree
3 accountable to no one
4 insight into
- 3 1 freelance
2 boss
3 solely
4 encountered
5 degree
- 4 possible answers:
I was a freelance illustrator for four years. I enjoyed similar advantages such as being able to choose what work to take on and being my own boss. Occasionally I encountered a degree of isolation as my work often got in the way of my social life. Over the years, I came to appreciate that my income was not guaranteed and that I had to take on extra work when it was available. I was able to take care of my family, open a restaurant, which my wife runs, and buy a car. I don't miss the additional benefits of a regular job because I have health insurance and I am enrolled in a pension scheme.

- 5 1 P 3 N 5 P 7 N
2 N 4 P 6 N 8 P
- 6 1 fit in
2 use her initiative
3 of collaboration
- 7 1 valued
2 part; split
3 foster/promote/
encourage
- 8 possible answers:
In general, I agree with the pros and cons above, although a good team shouldn't suppress individual enterprise and initiative.
Other advantages of working in a group:
1 It can improve your communication skills.
2 Individuals can learn from other members of the group and improve their skills.
Other disadvantages are:
1 Some individuals become very competitive with other individuals, and this can damage the effectiveness of the team.
2 If members of the team do not agree on the goals, it can be hard to make progress.

Unit 67

- 1 dispute, give in, break down, halt, closure
- 2 1 set
2 settle
3 ballot
4 set
- 3 1 closures
2 stake
3 dispute
4 precedent
- 4 minimum wage; fringe benefit; maternity leave; state pension; dental treatment; go on strike; trade union

- 5 1 maternity
2 union
3 bonus
4 go on
5 leave
- 6 entitled; pension
7 right; trade; strike
8 commission
9 right
10 minimum; leave
- 6 possible answers:
1 In my job, I don't get a commission because I'm not a salesman, and I don't get health or dental insurance either. However, I get the other perks mentioned. The annual bonus varies from year to year, but we usually get one. The other benefit I get is the opportunity to eat in a subsidized canteen, where the food is quite good and very cheap. The most important benefit for me is the company pension because it's worth the most money.
2 I enjoy all the rights mentioned, and I believe everyone should have those rights.
3 (answer from a 17-year-old still at school) I like the sound of an annual bonus, especially if it comes at Christmas when I need more money. I would also like paid sick leave if I was ill. I don't know much about pensions but my parents are always telling me they're important, so that would be good too.

Unit 68

- 1 reminder, prioritize, accomplish, anticipate, deadline, delegate
- 2 1 prioritized
2 remind
3 Both are possible.
4 basis; wherever
- 3 1 basis
2 sticks
3 anticipate
4 reminder
5 delegate
6 make a note
- 4 possible answers:
I think it is a good idea to make a note of tasks you need to do, but I don't think it is necessary to put reminders everywhere. Prioritizing is also important, but setting deadlines for every task is very difficult. I think it's also difficult sometimes to stick to one thing at a time. Sometimes you just have to do two things at the same time. I try to stick to my priorities. That's important. And you should always delegate if you can. Anticipating problems is not easy.
- 5 1 prompt
2 overwhelming
3 Both are possible.
4 stream
- 5 Both are possible.
6 flood
7 frustrated
8 Both are possible.
- 6 1 Our spending has got out of control.
2 My nerves are on edge.
3 Fortunately, the situation is under control.
4 I was overwhelmed by the response.
5 There's so much work. I'm stressed out.
6 He keeps interrupting me when I'm working; it's annoying.
- 7 1 interruptions
2 productive
3 productivity
- 4 promptly
5 stressed
6 endless
- 8 possible answers:
1 Fortunately, I don't get a constant stream of interruptions, but I find that even one or two can be a bit frustrating.
2 I'm usually quite productive in the morning, but less so in the afternoon.

- 3 I think my productivity would be improved if we had air conditioning. In the summer it gets very hot where I work, and it makes me feel a bit sleepy.
- 4 Personally, I like to reply to emails promptly, otherwise they build up and become overwhelming.
- 5 I don't think I get stressed out, but I do sometimes worry a bit that I don't have enough time.
- 6 No, I don't think so, but I know several friends who think like that.

Unit 69

1 possible answers:

- | | |
|----------|-------------|
| 1 soon | 5 control |
| 2 result | 6 past |
| 3 start | 7 support |
| 4 owns | 8 agreement |
-
- | | |
|--------------------------|------------------------|
| 2 1 strike/make/conclude | 5 imminent |
| 2 bid | 6 takeover/acquisition |
| 3 set | 7 agenda |
| 4 mount | 8 corporate |
-
- | | |
|------------------|------------------------------|
| 3 1 former boss | 6 outcome |
| 2 his leadership | 7 another bid / a higher bid |
| 3 backing | 8 merger |
| 4 a deal | |
| 5 shareholders | |
-
- 4 1 D 2 S 3 S 4 S 5 D 6 S
- | | |
|---------------------|------------------|
| 5 1 soared/rocketed | 5 coup |
| 2 plunged/plummeted | 6 climb |
| 3 peak | 7 in the wake of |
| 4 fresh | 8 pursuing |
-
- | | |
|--|------------------|
| 6 1 soared/rocketed | 5 floated |
| 2 collapsed (also possible: plunged/plummeted) | 6 to climb |
| 3 issued | 7 coup |
| 4 hostile | 8 reached a peak |
| | 9 pursue it |

Unit 70

- 1 1 A designer and manufacturer of safety helmets for use at sea.
 - 2 1993.
 - 3 Because surfing was a seasonal business.
 - 4 It had to be light, give protection and retain heat.
 - 5 No, he had to adapt them.
 - 6 He took out a bank loan.
 - 7 He launched the new safety helmets.
 - 8 Feedback from his customers.
 - 9 A good partnership with suppliers.
- 2 retention; investment; diversification; innovation; exploitation, launch
- | | |
|--------------|---------------|
| 3 1 contract | 5 innovative |
| 2 retain | 6 diversify |
| 3 protection | 7 partnership |
| 4 feedback | 8 potential |
-
- | | |
|------------------------|----------------------|
| 4 1 Both are possible. | 4 keep ahead of |
| 2 adapt | 5 founded |
| 3 that case | 6 Both are possible. |
-
- | | |
|--------------|-------------|
| 5 1 exploit | 5 contract |
| 2 Innovation | 6 potential |
| 3 refined | 7 feedback |
| 4 invest | 8 diversify |
-
- | | |
|------------------|----------------------------|
| 6 1 gap | 7 cases |
| 2 took out; loan | 8 keep; rivals/competitors |
| 3 manufacture | 9 founder; firm |
| 4 give | 10 launch |
| 5 investment | |
| 6 crew | |

Unit 71

- | | |
|-------|--|
| 1 1 G | 7 G |
| 2 G | 8 G |
| 3 B | 9 B |
| 4 G | 10 Probably B because it's not considered good if you are satisfied too easily, especially in the competitive world of business. |
| 5 B | |
| 6 B | |
-
- | | |
|---------------------|-----------------|
| 2 1 thrive/flourish | 6 dynamism |
| 2 passionate | 7 boasting |
| 3 forward | 8 dissatisfied |
| 4 aspire | 9 secret |
| 5 overcome | 10 breakthrough |
-
- 3 possible answers:
- 1 I think you need hard work or luck (and probably both) to thrive for a long time.
 - 2 I think it's good if you are passionate about what you do. I'm not sure it's essential in order to be successful, though.
 - 3 Forward planning is certainly important in business or a career.
 - 4 I'd like to feel that I had fulfilled my potential. In other words, I aspire to be the best I can be in my field.
 - 5 I had a motorbike accident when I was 21 and couldn't really walk for about three months.
 - 6 I'm not sure dynamism is that important, though it probably helps.
 - 7 Yes, I think it is possible to talk about your own achievements without boasting, but you need to be careful about how you do it, and also how much you do it.
 - 8 Yes, I have passed exams where I still felt dissatisfied because I could've done better.
 - 9 Penelope Cruz is very successful, and I think her secret is that she combines being very talented with being very beautiful.
 - 10 There are breakthroughs every year in the treatment of different cancers.
-
- | | |
|----------------|----------------------|
| 4 1 came | 5 failure |
| 2 interfere in | 6 Both are possible. |
| 3 lasts | 7 Both are possible. |
| 4 down | 8 last |
-
- 5 1 The business is going downhill. ~ Yeah, it's been deteriorating for a while now.
 - 2 What was the row about? ~ Kate got annoyed because of Sonny's interference in her project.
 - 3 Did Mia come top in the exam? ~ Yes, but Tom only just scraped through.
 - 4 Do you think the relationship will last long? ~ No, not if Kieran keeps letting her down.
 - 5 Why did she drop out of the course? ~ She told me it was hopeless.
 - 6 Why did you interfere in their cooking? ~ I just felt they were getting nowhere with it.
-
- | | |
|-----------|------------|
| 6 1 come | 4 struggle |
| 2 scraped | 5 row |
| 3 dropped | 6 nowhere |
-
- 7 possible answers:
- 1 Yes, I have come top in a few exams over the years.
 - 2 Yes, I just scraped through an important maths exam when I was 16.
 - 3 No, but I dropped out of a Spanish course because I was too busy with work.
 - 4 Actually, passing my driving test was a struggle because I failed the first time.
 - 5 Yes, I had a serious row with someone at work because they didn't give me an opportunity to apply for a job that I wanted. We have a better relationship now, but for a long time we didn't.
 - 6 Yes, I stopped doing yoga because I didn't think I was getting any better.

Unit 72

- | | | |
|----------|---|------------------------|
| 1 | 1 escalating/growing | 5 insoluble |
| | 2 confront | 6 exaggerate it |
| | 3 arise | 7 resolve |
| | 4 multiplied | 8 tackling |
| 2 | 1 escalating/growing | 5 overcome |
| | 2 address (confront/face up to are also possible) | 6 tackle/resolve |
| | 3 urgent | 7 insoluble |
| | 4 raised | 8 tackling/confronting |
| | | 9 minor |
| | | 10 escalate |

3 possible answers:

Litter on the streets is not a major problem, but it's not an easy problem to resolve because some people will always drop litter. It's a question of education, I think.

Graffiti is a major problem in some places, but where I live they are tackling it quite successfully. If you see graffiti, you can call a number, and they will send a team to clean it off. It seems to work.

Household rubbish is a growing problem and will only be resolved when we stop using so much plastic and packaging around everything we buy.

Some cities are now seriously starting to address the problem of pollution by introducing charges for vehicles with high pollution levels.

Parking is another growing problem as we increase the number of cars in society. Most cities in England are tackling it by increasing out of town parking areas to encourage people to get buses into the town centre.

Bullying has always been present, especially in schools. More schools are facing up to the problem now with both punishments for offenders and counselling for victims.

- | | | |
|----------|-----------------|-----------------|
| 4 | 1 esteem | 6 channel |
| | 2 get her down | 7 accept |
| | 3 articulate | 8 seriously |
| | 4 regardless | 9 damaging |
| | 5 insignificant | 10 playing down |
| 5 | 1 damaged | 5 reassuring |
| | 2 get her down | 6 setback |
| | 3 perspective | 7 significance |
| | 4 behind | 8 articulate |

6 possible answers:

I think teenagers are often unhappy about their appearance (I was), and this is bad for their self-esteem. I also agree that it is difficult to accept any kind of failure, and equally difficult to keep things in perspective.

Another problem for teenagers now is the significance of social media. This causes massive peer pressure to do what others do. It is easy in these circumstances for teenagers to exaggerate the significance of various problems.

Unit 73

- | | | |
|----------|------------------|-----------------------|
| 1 | 1 modify | 3 estimate v |
| | 2 contemporary | 4 formerly |
| 2 | 1 unfortunate | 6 modified |
| | 2 splendid | 7 it turned out to be |
| | 3 formerly | 8 estimated |
| | 4 well-preserved | 9 next to nothing |
| | 5 contemporary | 10 domestic animals |
| 3 | 1 former | 6 splendid |
| | 2 preserving | 7 contemporary |
| | 3 conversion | 8 converting |
| | 4 estimates | |
| | 5 modify | |

- | | | | | | | |
|----------|--------------------------|-----|-------------|------------------|--------|-----|
| 4 | 1 D | 2 S | 3 D | 4 S | 5 D | 6 S |
| 5 | 1 out | | 3 (as) good | | 5 new | |
| | 2 clip | | 4 date | | 6 hand | |
| 6 | 1 device | | | 6 packaging | | |
| | 2 antique | | | 7 reproduces | | |
| | 3 Ancient; reproductions | | | 8 up; innovative | | |
| | 4 reconditioned | | | 9 mechanism | | |
| | 5 genuine | | | 10 clip | | |

Unit 74

- 1** leave sth to the last minute, in retrospect, with hindsight, at one time, from time to time, for the time being, time flies, day-to-day
- 2**
- 1 In retrospect, I didn't enjoy it.
 - 2 He does things at the last minute.
 - 3 It was an ambition at one time.
 - 4 I go there from time to time.
 - 5 I live on a day-to-day basis.
 - 6 I'll be OK here for the time being.
- 3**
- | | |
|--|-------------------------|
| 1 back | 5 punctual; punctuality |
| 2 hindsight | 6 flown |
| 3 leaves everything till the last minute | 7 virtue; vices |
| 4 about/high | 8 for the time being |

4 possible answers:

I think time definitely flies when you're older.

I wouldn't say I get depressed generally, but certain events make me depressed from time to time, such as political events, social issues or family issues.

That's not true for me because I started a pension some years ago. However, it's probably about time I increased the amount of money I put into my pension.

I never wanted to be a journalist, but at one time I wanted to be a professional rugby player.

No, that's not true. I do certain things at the last minute such as sending people birthday cards, but in general I'm quite organized.

That's not true for me because I went to university.

In general that's true, though I sometimes think about how I might be happier.

I am very punctual but I'm not sure it's a great virtue.

No, that's not true for me. I often plan for the future.

I'm sure that's true. I can think of several times in my life when I didn't work as hard as I should've done.

- 5**
- | | |
|----------------------|----------------------|
| 1 vague | 5 Both are possible. |
| 2 Both are possible. | 6 slipped |
| 3 Both are possible. | 7 lasting |
| 4 vivid | 8 land |
- 6**
- 1 On the whole
 - 2 extraordinary
 - 3 recalling
 - 4 recollection
 - 5 landing
- 7**
- | | |
|-----------------------|----------------------------|
| 1 vivid/unforgettable | 6 Looking back |
| 2 slipped | 7 extraordinary/incredible |
| 3 landed | 8 unforgettable |
| 4 inches | 9 recall |
| 5 stuck | |
- 8**
- 1 recollection
 - 2 vivid/unforgettable
 - 3 speaking; recall; vague
 - 4 back

possible answers, from Hungary:

- 1 To be honest, I find it hard to recall true memories of my early childhood. My parents were keen photographers so they got a shot of practically every step my sister and I took. Whenever I try to look back on my childhood, I can mostly recall the photos I have seen many times since then. This feels sad because I will never know if the memory would have faded had it not been for the photo immortalizing the moment.
- 2 I would say it is the Christmas Eves we used to have when I was a child. We would wait outside the living room for my father to ring the bell, which meant we were allowed to go in and have a look at the glistening tree and the neatly wrapped presents underneath. We would step in and with my mother taking the lead we would start singing. It was pure magic for me back then.
- 3 It depends on the emotion attached to the event. I tend to avoid recalling embarrassing situations or events that went particularly badly for me. What I remember most vividly is situations where I excelled in something or achieved my goals, however insignificant they appear now.
- 4 I prefer looking ahead, but now and again certain smells or sights or people I happen to meet evoke some memories, and in those moments I do enjoy looking back and recalling things that I have experienced or places I have been to. It's also great to reminisce in the company of old friends and have a laugh about the past we shared. I'm obviously talking about good memories. As for the unpleasant ones, they're probably not worth dwelling on, so I just try to erase them from my memory.

Unit 75

- 1

1 Furthermore	5 Besides
2 Both are possible.	6 Both are possible.
3 otherwise	7 providing
4 Both are possible.	8 thereby
- 2
 - 1 while/whereas
 - 2 Furthermore/Moreover/Besides
 - 3 provided/providing
 - 4 Nevertheless/Nonetheless
 - 5 Besides (*Furthermore* and *Moreover* have the same meaning, but are too formal for this context.)
 - 6 thereby
 - 7 consequently
 - 8 otherwise
- 3 possible answers:

1 I can't afford it.	4 you keep quiet.
2 I'm very punctual.	5 someone could get in.
3 I was late for work.	6 I'm glad I saw it.
- 4

considering	conclusion
inconvenience	inadequate
adequate	compensation
- 5
 - 1 thus/hence
 - 2 prior to
 - 3 in view of
 - 4 With regard to the other climbers / Regarding the other climbers
 - 5 In conclusion
 - 6 were obliged
- 6

1 adequate	12 convenience
2 thus/hence	
3 Prior to	
4 With regard to / Regarding	
5 In view of	
6 In conclusion	
7 compensation	
8 obliged	
9 inconvenience	
10 since	
11 inadequate	

Unit 76

- 1

argument	evaluate	evaluation	criticize	incoherent
present v	narrative	narrator	stylistic	summarize
- 2

1 summarize	5 criterion
2 assessment	6 presentation
3 narrator	7 argument
4 Both are possible.	8 Both are possible.
- 3

1 narrative	6 command
2 summary	7 register
3 assessment/evaluation;	8 argument
incoherent	9 present; extended
4 stylistic	10 argument; coherent
5 criteria	
- 4 Justify is different.
- 5 The words which most clearly show a point of view are: condemn, condone, assert, justify, and adopt a stance.
- 6

1 condemnation	4 exploration
2 conclusion	5 assertion
3 illustration	6 justification
- 7

1 outlined	6 justify
2 condemned	7 illustrated
3 explored	8 sat on the fence
4 condone	9 assert
5 adopt; stance	10 draw any conclusions

Unit 77

- 1

expose	imply	defy	convey	portray	embody
inherit	inherent				
- 2

betrayal	defiant
portrayal	evil
implication	pregnant
inheritance	conventional; unconventional
- 3

1 an explanation	5 the truth
2 difficult	6 know
3 strange	7 an indirect
4 beyond	8 refuse
- 4

1 depicted	5 convey
2 pregnant	6 irrational
3 conventions	7 embodies
4 rage	8 Ellen's companionship
- 5

1 implied	6 inheritance
2 conventional	7 inherent
3 alien	8 exposes
4 feminist	9 pregnancy
5 evil	10 incident
- 6

1 portrayed	6 Fate
2 embodies	7 mercy
3 embodiment	8 tragedy
4 defies	9 conveyed
5 betrayed	

Unit 78

- 1

outstanding	depending	submit	nominate
nomination	controversial	alternate	venue
prestigious	imaginative	pretentious	

 Controversy and controversy are both possible.
- 2

1 varies	5 prestigious
2 deserves	6 Both are possible.
3 Both are possible.	7 Both are possible.
4 challenging	8 nominated

- 3** 1 annually
2 panel
3 venue
4 sponsor
5 controversy
- 4** 1 artistic
2 submitted
3 nominations
4 split
- 5** 1 It alternates between Melbourne and Sydney.
2 The quality of the work is variable.
3 Colours change depending on the season.
4 The paintings are very imaginative.
5 Her work is very controversial.
6 There were three nominees.
- 6 demonstrated (also possible: displayed)
7 shortlist
8 challenging
- 5 pretentious
6 bold
7 merit
8 prestigious

- 5** 1 construction
2 structurally
3 resistance
- 6** 1 climate and geology
2 the aesthetic objectives of the owner and architect
3 because each one is unique
4 to see if the building can resist/withstand the effects of strong winds
5 steel or reinforced concrete columns
6 concrete
7 by a crane
8 girders
9 by attaching panels of material, such as glass or metal, to the framework
- 4 motion
5 aesthetic

Unit 79

- 1** sit: experimental, empirical, objective, scrutiny, verify, conviction
site: hypothesis, biased, scrutinize
- 2** 1 biased/subjective
2 scrutiny/inspection
3 hypothesis
- 3** 1 phenomenon
2 verify
3 empirical
4 confirm
- 4** 1 subjective/biased
2 phenomena
3 objectivity
4 unbiased
5 hypothesis
6 verification
- 5** therapy
hereditary
abnormal
molecule
- 6** 1 defective
2 abnormal
3 unit
4 hereditary
5 short-lived
- 7** 1 therapy; cells
2 mutation
3 inserts/inserted
4 cells; rapidly
- 4 unbiased
5 conviction
6 conduct
- 5 biased/subjective
6 scrutinize
7 experimental
- 7 experiment/survey
8 evidence/knowledge/
research
9 formulate/confirm
10 political/moral
- molecular
immune
mutate
defect
- 6 immune
7 processing
8 rapid
9 long-lived
10 immunity
- 5 arise; defect
6 heredity
7 insertion
8 molecular; molecule

Unit 80

- 1** 1 D 3 S 5 S 7 S
2 S 4 D 6 D 8 D
- 2** 1 g 3 d 5 h 7 a
2 f 4 b 6 c 8 e
- 3** 1 construction
2 reinforced
3 concrete
4 framework
- 4** 1 concrete
2 reinforced
3 in motion
4 (vertical) load
5 constraints
- 5 law
6 comply
7 regulation
8 concrete
- 6 panels
7 undergone
8 thorough
9 excessive
10 skyscrapers

Unit 81

- 1** 1 no doubt
2 whether or not
3 give me a lift
4 make it tonight
- 2** 1 B 3 B 5 G 7 G
2 G 4 B 6 B 8 G
- 3** 1 stick
2 bet
3 make it
4 to go
- 4** 1 me a lift?
2 minute.
3 not like Vicky.
4 up to you.
5 he'll turn up.
6 a mess of the task.
- 5** 1 make; reckon; mean; bound; know; doubt
2 like; made; go; to; not
3 lift; went off; any
4 disaster; bet/reckon; stuck; turn
- 6** These are some other meanings:
RECKON
1 be reckoned be generally considered to be sth: He's reckoned to be quite good on the piano.
2 inf expect to do sth: We reckon to get there about seven.
STICK
1 push sth sharp into sth: The nurse stuck the needle in my arm.
2 fix something to something else with glue, etc. I stuck the stamp on the envelope.
BET
1 risk money on a race or an event by predicting the result: I bet £50 on the result of the cup final.
Look at the APP for more.

Unit 82

- 1** propose – put sth forward
compensate – make up for sth
cancel – call sth off
postpone – put sth off
deceive – take sb in
confess – own up to sth
communicate – get sth across
overcome – get over sth

- 2 1 I never expected him to own up to the crime.
 2 Nothing can make up for the loss of earnings.
 3 Will someone bring the topic up at the meeting?
 4 Who put forward the plan? / put the plan forward?
 5 The inspector isn't easily taken in.
 6 Why did they call off the meeting? / call the meeting off?
 7 He has always looked up to his uncle.
 8 When did the new dictionary come out?
 9 The match has been put off for a week.
 10 We have to get our message across more clearly.

- 3 1 it come out? 5 taken in (by him).
 2 bring it up. 6 put it off.
 3 we'll get over it. 7 owned up to it.
 4 look up to them. 8 call it off.

- 4 1 reach somewhere
 2 begin to have the responsibility for sth, especially in place of sb else
 3 make equipment ready for use
 4 examine sth carefully, especially to find sth
 5 make contact by phone
 6 experience or suffer sth
 7 gain control of a country, etc.
 8 build sth or put sth somewhere

- 5 1 got through 5 getting through
 2 set up 6 go through
 3 going through 7 set up
 4 take over 8 take over

- 6 1 getting through 5 going through
 2 set up 6 setting up
 3 taken over 7 set up
 4 gone through 8 gets through

7 possible answers:

- 1 Yes, I was driving in the south of France near the border with Spain, and suddenly there was an incredible rainstorm. The road flooded and all the cars were stuck; the water came halfway up the door. We waited for about half an hour, and then the water started to go down, but it was quite frightening.
 2 No, I've only put up a tent in a hot country in summer.
 3 Yes, I took over from my husband once when he was feeling very ill.
 4 No, I haven't, fortunately.
 5 Yes, once. I was told my passport had nearly run out, and I should make sure I renewed it when I got back home.
 6 No, I'm pleased to say I haven't!
 7 I've helped someone set up their phone, but not a computer.
 8 I do. My cousin is hopeless with money and always spends anything he gets immediately. It means by the end of the month he always wants to borrow from me.

Unit 83

- 1 1 off the top of my head
 2 in one ear and out the other
 3 Let me see
 4 When it comes to science
 5 under the weather
 6 no good worrying about it
 7 my mind goes a complete blank
 8 What do you have in mind?

- 2 1 mind 6 do with
 2 as well 7 as I know
 3 blank 8 and out the other
 4 bet 9 minute
 5 there

- 4 1 make up your mind 3 to my mind
 2 bear in mind 4 speak your mind

- 5 1 want to do sth 4 possible
 2 you don't know 5 I don't know
 3 not being serious 6 wait for you

- 6 you're kidding; no way; how come; what for; you bet; don't ask me; hang on; best of luck

- 7 1 kidding 6 of luck
 2 way/chance 7 come
 3 knows 8 for
 4 your time 9 faintest (idea)
 5 bet 10 contrary

Unit 84

- 1 1 fails 5 true
 2 fact 6 happens
 3 true 7 only
 4 face 8 resort

- 2 1 If only 5 lose face
 2 a good thing (that) 6 all else fails
 3 a dream come true 7 but for
 4 that's life 8 as a matter of fact

- 3 1 too good to be true 6 as it happens/as a matter of fact
 2 a last/final resort 7 a good thing (that)
 3 that's life 8 a dream come true
 4 if only
 5 but for

- 4 1 by very far 5 Who on the earth
 2 Believe it or believe not 6 if that you don't mind
 3 The only bad thing 7 not to be mention
 4 Guess you what 8 I wouldn't really mind

- 5 1 Guess 5 wouldn't
 2 thing 6 wonder
 3 earth 7 chance
 4 some 8 all

- 6 1 It didn't work at all. / Believe it or not, it didn't work.
 2 Do you know if it's open, by any chance?
 3 Guess what! Melinda's going to ... / Melinda's going to marry a famous pop star, believe it or not.
 4 Why on earth are you wearing gloves in the summer?
 5 Jacob looks about 20, but believe it or not, he's only 13.
 6 He's been very ill, so no wonder he looks thin.
 7 They have a large apartment here, not to mention a farm in Wales and a house on the coast.
 8 We said we were members but, for some reason, they wouldn't let us in ... / ... but, believe it or not, they wouldn't let us in.
 9 it's by far his most violent film.
 10 I'd like to know more about your background, if you don't mind. / If you don't mind, I'd like to know more about your background.

Unit 85

- 1 trial and error sooner or later
 more or less odds and ends
 the pros and cons safe and sound
 back and forth on and off
 sick and tired law and order

- 2 1 death 4 foremost 7 less
 2 pieces 5 sound 8 order
 3 cons 6 forwards

- 3 1 sooner or later
 2 sick and tired / sick to death
 3 (by) trial and error
 4 now and again / now and then
 5 more or less
 6 bits and pieces / odds and ends

Unit 86

- 1**
- | | | |
|-----------|------------|----------|
| 1 post | 5 log | 9 bat |
| 2 cakes | 6 sieve | 10 sheet |
| 3 bone | 7 beetroot | |
| 4 feather | 8 dream | |
- 2**
- 1 He's deaf as a post.
 - 2 She's blind as a bat.
 - 3 She's thin as a rake.
 - 4 It worked like a dream.
 - 5 She went/was as white as a sheet.
 - 6 They were as good as gold.
 - 7 She went as red as a beetroot.
 - 8 He's got a mind like a sieve.
 - 9 The little girl was as light as a feather.
 - 10 The new phone is selling like hot cakes.

Unit 87

- 1**
- | | | | | |
|-----|-----|-----|-----|------|
| 1 d | 3 h | 5 j | 7 f | 9 b |
| 2 e | 4 g | 6 a | 8 c | 10 i |
- 2**
- | | |
|---------------------------|-----------------|
| 1 broadly speaking | 6 in the end |
| 2 All the same | 7 as for |
| 3 so as to | 8 do her good |
| 4 In any case | 9 by the way |
| 5 As far as I'm concerned | 10 Even so, ... |
- 3**
- | | |
|--|---------------------------|
| 1 Incidentally | 6 Alternatively |
| 2 On the whole / By and large / Broadly speaking | 7 do them good. |
| 3 Mind you | 8 so as to |
| 4 Anyway/Besides | 9 As far as I'm concerned |
| 5 It's true; Even so / All the same | 10 in the end |
- 4**
- 1 All the same / Nevertheless / Even so
 - 2 Alternatively
 - 3 so as to
 - 4 extent
 - 5 By the way/ Incidentally
 - 6 As for
 - 7 besides / in any case / anyway
 - 8 in the end
 - 9 by and large / on the whole / broadly speaking / to a large extent
 - 10 It's true; All the same / Even so / Nevertheless

Unit 88

- 1**
- 1 So far, so good.
 - 2 Two heads are better than one.
 - 3 It's a small world.
 - 4 First come, first served.
 - 5 Practice makes perfect.
 - 6 No news is good news.
 - 7 The more the merrier.
 - 8 Don't judge a book by its cover.
- 2**
- 1 The grass is always greener on the other side (of the fence).
 - 2 Actions speak louder than words.
 - 3 First come, first served.
 - 4 Better late than never.
 - 5 Two heads are better than one.
 - 6 Don't judge a book by its cover.
 - 7 It's a small world.
 - 8 An eye for an eye.

- 3**
- 1 better late than never
 - 2 better safe than sorry
 - 3 no news is good news
 - 4 the more the merrier
 - 5 practice makes perfect
 - 6 the end justifies the means
 - 7 two wrongs don't make a right
 - 8 beggars can't be choosers
 - 9 prevention is better than cure
 - 10 don't judge a book by its cover

- 4**
- | | |
|--|-----------------------------------|
| 1 better safe than sorry | 8 better late than never |
| 2 practice makes perfect | 9 beggars can't be choosers |
| 3 two heads are better than one | 10 first come, first served |
| 4 no news is good news | 11 Two wrongs don't make a right. |
| 5 an eye for an eye | 12 end justifies the means |
| 6 so far, so good | |
| 7 the grass is always greener on the other side (of the fence) | |

5 possible answers:

- 1 I agree that you shouldn't judge a book by its cover, and I think that prevention is better than cure. I also find there is a common human tendency to believe that the grass is always greener – it's very easy to look around and see people who have more than you. But if you look around it is also easy to find people who have less.
- 2 I think there are some circumstances when the end never justifies the means, and I don't believe in an eye for an eye. I'm not sure why people say the more the merrier. It might be true sometimes, but quite often the opposite is true – having more people can spoil some things.
- 6 1 How a person looks is less important than their character.
- 2 When you love somebody, you cannot see their faults.
- 3 You should care for your own family first, before you start looking after others.
- 4 rely on one course of action for success rather than give yourself several different possibilities
- 5 After an unpleasant experience, you are careful to avoid something similar.
- 6 used to say that when you are away from somebody you love, you love them even more

Unit 89

- 1**
- | | |
|------------------------------------|-----------------|
| 1 tons/piles | 5 odd |
| 2 thereabouts | 6 approximately |
| 3 kind | 7 somehow |
| 4 of that sort / along those lines | 8 vague |
| | 9 somebody |
- 2**
- 1 sort of pretending to be ill
 - 2 have loads/tons/piles of rice
 - 3 executive or something
 - 4 give or take a few minutes
 - 5 tomorrow somehow or other
 - 6 somewhere in the region
- 3**
- 1 We invited a hundred or so to the wedding.
 - 2 He looks sort of depressed.
 - 3 Her job is something to do with marketing.
 - 4 There was lots of good stuff at the festival.
 - 5 It's in the region of 300 miles.
 - 6 We could go to France or somewhere.
 - 7 I've got £500, give or take a few pounds.
 - 8 We could get him a book or something (like that / along those lines / of that sort) for his birthday.

Unit 90

- 1 1 reported/said 5 empowered/authorized
 2 overcome 6 known
 3 suspended/jailed 7 scheduled
 4 cremated 8 caught up
- 2 1 said to be dangerous (*also possible: be reported ...*)
 2 jailed for five years
 3 scheduled for 9.00 p.m.
 4 short-listed (for the prize)
 5 caught up in a traffic jam for ages
 6 suspended from school
 7 known for her charity work.
 8 meant to join the army / meant for the army
 9 overcome with emotion when he saw her.

Unit 91

- 1 1 unknown 7 unfinished
 2 incapable 8 disloyal
 3 inhuman 9 unemployed
 4 disobedient 10 unfamiliar
 5 uncharacteristic 11 incompatible
 6 invalid 12 insufficient
- 2 an unofficial strike; an incompatible couple; an invalid ticket; insufficient money; an unqualified teacher; a disobedient dog; inhuman conditions; an unfamiliar name
- 3 1 inhuman 7 unpaid
 2 unknown 8 uncharacteristic (of her)
 3 unemployed 9 unfamiliar
 4 undercooked 10 disloyal (of him)
 5 unfinished
 6 incapable
- 4 1 advised 4 judge
 2 charge 5 bought
 3 calculated 6 believed
- 5 1 miscalculated 4 misunderstood
 2 Both are possible. 5 Both are possible.
 3 unpack 6 overdid it
- 6 1 overcharged 5 misjudged
 2 misled 6 mistreating/mistreat
 3 unwrap 7 overestimated
 4 undo 8 reassess

Unit 92

- 1 1 settlement 6 resignation
 2 refusal 7 proposal
 3 acknowledgement 8 objection
 4 completion 9 denial
 5 measurement 10 appreciation
- 2 positive: encouragement, appreciation, collaboration, accomplishment, settlement
 negative: dismissal, refusal, objection, denial
- 3 1 hesitated 6 inspecting
 2 denied 7 been editing / edited
 3 objected 8 collaborate
 4 acknowledged 9 detect
 5 accommodate 10 objected
- 4 refusal / denial: Both are saying 'no' to something.
 inspection / examination: Both involve looking at sth carefully.
 cooperation / collaboration: Both involve working with others towards a common goal.
 agreement / settlement: Both involve finding a solution to a conflict/problem that both parties can agree on.
 dismissal / resignation: Both mean leaving a job (under different circumstances).

- 5 1 him (some / a lot of, etc.) encouragement
 2 a settlement
 3 an inspection next week
 4 hesitation at the beginning
 5 measurements of the room?
 6 his resignation yesterday
 7 accommodation for three more
 8 creation of the new company
- 6 1 objections 6 denial
 2 proposal 7 appreciation
 3 acknowledgement 8 edition
 4 completion 9 detection
 5 dismissals

Unit 93

- 1 agricultural cooperative affordable profitable
 progressive structural destructive cooperation
- 2 1 are affordable 5 structural
 2 cooperative 6 agricultural
 3 profitable 7 selective
 4 destructive 8 logical
- 3 1 protective 5 educational
 2 progressive 6 selective
 3 cooperative 7 logic
 4 functional 8 cooperation
- 4 architectural, innovative, believable, experimental, administrative, clinical, acceptable, constitutional, communicative, excusable
- 5 Answer: intensify
- 6 1 maximize 6 specify
 2 strengthen 7 weaken
 3 simplify 8 stabilize
 4 authorize 9 clarify
 5 shorten 10 specialize
- 7 1 The builder said he would strengthen the wall.
 2 We need to clarify our position on this issue.
 3 He specializes in this field of medicine.
 4 The presence of the police intensified the concern in the crowd.
 5 Are you authorized to replace the tickets?
 6 I need to maximize the time available to us.
 7 We need to simplify the instructions for students.
 8 You must specify the details on the form.
 9 stabilize
 10 weakens
- 8 tighten, legalize, modernize, visualize, purify, economize, equalize, pacify

Unit 94

- 1 transport n; transport v; combat n, v; extract n; extract v;
 deposit n, v; dispute n, v; torture n, v
- 2 1 c 3 a 5 h 7 e
 2 f 4 g 6 d 8 b
- 3 1 There was a pause, then the speaker sat down.
 2 The table was (completely) in the shade / in complete shade.
 3 We have an oil filter.
 4 The Liberals have a five-point lead / have taken the lead by five points.
 5 We could hear (the) cheers from the crowd.
 6 Two of the prisoners suffered torture.
 7 What transport will they use for the goods?
 8 They will battle to get the idea approved.

- 4 1 extract
2 mate
3 trace
4 deposit
5 combat
- 6 trace
7 combat
8 deposit
9 disputing
10 tackled

5 possible answers:

- 1 My best mate is a guy called Tom, and I've known him ever since university.
- 2 Yes, I have been in dispute with a rail company trying to get money back for a journey that was cancelled.
- 3 No, I haven't but I know several people who have traced their families back over three or four generations.
- 4 Yes, I think I had to battle really hard to get to university. I missed one whole school term through illness and had to work incredibly hard to catch up.
- 5 Most money I earn is deposited automatically in my bank account, but I remember going to my bank about two weeks ago to deposit a cheque that somebody had given me.
- 6 I always sit in the shade because I burn easily if I sit in the sun.
- 7 I sometimes cheer even when I'm watching sport on TV, but I always cheer if I go to see live football matches when my team are playing.
- 8 Yes, I had to pay a deposit when I rented a room in my second year at university.

- 6 Abuse, alert, support, bid, bow and chase can all be used as nouns with no change in meaning. (But note that the noun *abuse* is pronounced with an 's' sound, and the verb is pronounced with a 'z' sound.)

Unit 95

- 1 proceed interact exclude correspond embark
reconcile congratulate distinguish adhere substitute
- 2 more positive: embark; interact; congratulate; proceed;
confer; reconcile
more negative: deprive; dispose; exclude; surrender
- 3 1 on 3 of 5 with 7 of
2 from 4 with 6 from 8 on
- 4 1 confer 6 dispose
2 devoted 7 cater
3 distinguish 8 adhere
4 proceed 9 compensate
5 interact 10 cling
- 5 1 surrendered 7 compensate / make
2 reconcile up
3 distracts 8 exclude
4 insisted 9 substitute
5 deprived 10 devote
6 congratulated
- 6 cope with sth stare at sb
relate to sb reflect on sth
subtract sth from sth stem from sth
impose sth on/upon sb opt for sth

Unit 96

- 1 1 of 2 in 5 for 7 of
2 on 4 of 6 on 8 in
- 2 1 limitations/restraints 7 contempt
2 exception 8 advantage
3 substitute
4 reminder
5 confidence
6 exposure

- 3 1 exposure to 5 exception of
2 involvement in 6 contempt for
3 emergence of 7 reminder of
4 limitations/restraints on 8 advantage of

4 possible answers:

I have confidence in my ability to manage my life in general, but no confidence in my ability to be successful in business.

I don't think you should take advantage of every opportunity. Sometimes more money just means more problems, and not all ways of making money are legal.

Yes, I think that's true.

I don't need reminders of people's birthdays; I can remember everyone's birthday in my family.

I'd like to have greater involvement in charity work; I will do more when I have time.

I think that's true. You can't have what you want without some effort.

The most expensive thing I've ever bought is a sofa, which I got in a sale.

Yes, I would support government limitations on air travel.

There are pluses and minuses, but on the whole, I think social media is allowing people to be more unkind and ruder to each other.

I feel contempt for certain corrupt and egotistical politicians.

Unit 97

- 1 intent subject compatible inherent resistant
liable representative dedicated dependent
sceptical immune

- 2 1 to 5 to 9 with
2 about 6 on 10 in
3 of 7 to
4 on 8 to

- 3 1 F – Someone who is immune to a disease has little or no chance of getting it.
2 F – A feature which is inherent in a system cannot be removed from it.
3 T
4 F – Someone who is dedicated to their work doesn't leave their workplace early.
5 F – If an agreement is subject to approval, it might happen.
6 T
7 F – A qualification that is equivalent to a degree is similar to/like a degree.
8 T

- 4 1 liable to 5 intent on/upon
2 resistant to ensuring
3 immune to 6 sceptical of/about
4 equivalent to 7 representative of
8 inherent in

Unit 98

- 1 1 at 3 at 5 on 7 on
2 on 4 in 6 away 8 by
- 2 1 at short notice / at a moment's notice
2 at present
3 on the basis of
4 by no means
5 at once / right away / straight away
6 on purpose
7 by choice
8 on good terms / on friendly terms

- 3** 1 by choice
2 at once / right away / straight away
3 at present
4 in the near future
5 on purpose
6 on bad terms
7 at short notice / at a moment's notice (also possible: at once, right away, straight away)
8 in full
9 by no means
10 on the basis of
- 4** in possession of, in office; under investigation, under attack; by means of; on hold; out of respect, out of touch
- 5** 1 in power / in office
2 under investigation
3 in possession of
4 in honour of / out of respect for
5 out of touch with
6 under attack / under construction
- 6** 1 hold
2 respect; bereaved
3 touch
4 possession
5 tunnel; construction
6 giant
7 means
8 slaves / slave labour
9 board
10 honour

Unit 99

- 1** brutal, bizarre, favourable, upsetting, peculiar, conventional, reluctant, vicious, outstanding, eminent, notorious, infamous
- 2** positive meaning: outstanding, favourable, eminent, exceptional
- 3** evil/wicked, exceptional/outstanding, brutal/vicious, reluctant/unwilling, notorious/infamous, bizarre/weird, disturbing/upsetting
- 4** 1 evil
2 bizarre
3 eminent
4 notorious/infamous
5 disturbing/upsetting
6 unconventional
7 exceptional/
outstanding
8 brutal/vicious
9 willing
10 conventional
- 5** 1 bare arms
2 a comparable house
3 Correct.
4 a naked body
5 can be deadly
6 far superior
7 Correct.
8 always very tasty
- 6** 1 comprehensive
2 childlike
3 superb
4 deathly
5 comprehensible
6 tasteless
- 7** 1 comparative
2 bare
3 incomprehensible
4 tasteful/tasteless
5 childish
6 superior
7 naked
8 deadly

Unit 100

- 1** 1 presumably
2 basically/essentially
3 ultimately
4 frankly
5 virtually/practically
6 apparently
- 2** 1 Evidently
2 strangely (enough) / oddly (enough) / curiously (enough)
3 Practically
4 ultimately
5 basically
6 to be (perfectly) honest
7 fair enough
8 presumably

- 3** 1 Evidently/Apparently
2 entirely
3 fair enough
4 frankly / to be (perfectly) honest (also possible: ultimately, basically)
5 curiously (enough) / strangely (enough) / oddly (enough)
6 presumably
7 practically/virtually
8 ultimately

4 possible answer:

When I was in my twenties, I would've been prepared to commute every day for a better job with more money. Now in my forties, I'm not sure. I wouldn't see so much of my children, and I don't think I have the energy now to spend basically 12 hours a day working.

- 5** 1 purely
2 truly
3 precisely
4 primarily/chiefly/
predominantly
5 briefly
6 invariably
7 concept
8 sessions
9 strictly
- 6** 1 chiefly/purely
2 strictly
3 purely
4 purely/briefly/chiefly
5 invariably
6 simply/truly
7 strictly
8 simply
- 7** 1 primarily/chiefly/
predominantly
2 invariably
3 briefly
4 precisely
5 briefly
6 truly
7 precisely
8 simply/absolutely
9 purely
10 strictly

Word list

The CEFR levels given in this Word list indicate the words and phrases which are from the **Oxford 5000**. The numbers are unit numbers, not page numbers.

- abnormal** 79
abolish C1 54
abolition 54
about *as in* **be about to do sth** B1 53
absence C1 *as in* **absence makes the heart grow fonder** 88
absent-minded 5
absolute B2 52
absolutely B2 100
absorb (= take in liquid, etc.) B2 6; (= understand) C1 6
abuse *n, v* C1 33
accelerate C1 26
accelerator 26
accept (= continue in a difficult situation) B1 72; (= agree to sth; allow sb to be part of a group) B1 19; **accept responsibility for sth/sb** 19
acceptable B2 23
accidentally B2 63
accommodate B2 92
accompany B2 44
accomplish B2 68
accomplishment C1 92
accountable (to sb) C1 66
accountant B2 64
accumulate C1 32
accuracy B2 57
accurate B2 1
accuse sb (of sth) B2 95
acknowledge B2 92
acknowledgement 92
acquire B2 39
acquisition C1 69
acquit sb (of sth) 53
acre C1 61
action A1 *as in* **actions speak louder than words** 88
activist C1 59
adapt (to sth) B2 45
adapt sth (for sth) B2 70
adaptation C1 43
additional B2 66
address (a problem) B2 72
adequate B2 75
adhere to sth C1 95
adjust (= change sth slightly) B2 11; (= get used to sth) B2 45
adjustment C1 11; C1 45
administration B2 65
admit sb (to hospital) 52
adolescence 21
adolescent *n* C1, *adj* 21
adulthood 21
adopt (= take a point of view) B2 76
advance *n* **advances (in sth)** 48; **in advance** B2 37
advantage *as in* **take advantage of sth** 97
adventure A2 36
adventurous 36
advocate *n, v* C1 58
aesthetic C1 80
affair (= event/situation) B2 29
affection C1 16
affectionate 16
affordable B2 93
agenda B2 69
agile 10
agility 10
aggressive B2 19
agricultural C1 93
aid *n* B2 56
Airbnb™ 37
aircraft B2 55
alarm *n* B1 *as in* **set the alarm** 31
alert *adj* C1 26
alert *n* C1 56; **on the alert** 26
alien *adj* C1 77
alike *adj* C1 22
all the same 87
allegation C1 62
allege C1 62
allegedly C1 62
allergic to sth 14
allergy 14
alert *as in* **on the alert** 26
allocate C1 51
almond 24
alter B2 45
alteration 45
alternate (between A and B) 78
alternatively 87
ambiguity 1
ambiguous 1
ambulance B2 27
amend *v* C1 45
amendment C1 45
ancient A2 73
anger B2 8
annually B2 78
anticipate B2 68
antique 73
antivirus 40
anxiety B2 18
anxious B2 18
anyway A2 87
apologetic 3
apparent B2 22
apparently B2 100
appeal (to sb) *v* B2 37
appealing C1 37
appetite C1 25
appetizing 25
applaud C1 43
applause 43
appliance 46
apply (pressure) 13
appoint C1 65
appreciation C1 92
apprentice 64
apprenticeship 64
appropriate B2 1
approval B2 20
approve of sb/sth B2 20
approximately B1 89
apricot 24
apron 29
arable 35
argument (= set of reasons) B1 76
arise B2 72
armed B2 55; **the armed forces** 55
arms B2 55, 56
arrogance 17
arrogant 17
arson 33
arsonist 33
articulate *v* C1, *adj* 72
artistic B2 78
as
a favour 6
a matter of fact 84

- blind as a bat** 86
deaf as a post 86
dry as a bone 86
far as I know 83
far as I'm concerned B2 87
for sth B2 87
good as gold 86
good as new 73
it happens 84
light as a feather 86
long as B2 31
red as a beetroot 86
thin as a rake 86
white as a sheet 86
ashamed B2 18
ask *v as in* **ask (sb) a favour** 6; **don't ask me** 83
asparagus 24
aspect B2 43
aspire (to (be) sth) C1 71
assert C1 76; **assert yourself** C1 16
assertion C1 76
assertive 16
assess B2 60, 76
assessment B2 60, 76
assistance B2 61
associated with sth/sb B2 50
assume B2 57
assumption B2 57
asthma 14
astonished 18
astounded 18
asylum C1 49
at
a moment's notice 98
all 84
any minute (now) 81
home (= playing sport) 41
once B2 98
one time 74
present B2 98
short notice 98
stake 67
the scene (of sth) 27
your own pace 21
atom 79
attack *n* A2 *as in* **under attack** 98
attic 38
attitude B1 16
attraction B1 33
aubergine 24
audience A2 43
authentic C1 73
authority B2 (= organization) 51
authorize C1 93
authorized *as in* **be authorized to do sth** 90
automatic B2 26
avert 59
avocado 24
awareness (of sth) B2 32
away (= playing sport) 41
awkward B2 44
axe *v* 56
back sb/sth 56, 69
back and forth 86
back sth up 40
background noise 12
backing C1 69
backup C1 40
backwards B1 *as in* **backwards and forwards** 85
bacteria B2 15
bad-tempered 5
badge B2 29
badly-hit 68
bail C1 53
balance (A with/and B) B1 66
balancing act 61
bald 7
ballot *n* C1, *v* 67
B and B 37
bank statement 32
barbecue *n* 29
bare C1 99
barely B2 11
bark *v* 12
barman/barmaid 64
barrier B2 59
basically B2 38, 100
basil 24
basis B2 *as in* **on the basis (of sth)** 98
bathe 15
battle *n* B1, *v* B2 94
be
a good thing/job that ... 84
about to do sth B1 53
authorized to do sth 90
behind sb 72
better/worse off 66
caught up in sth 90
confined to sth 48
cremated 90
empowered to do sth C1 90
getting on for sth 7
in two minds about sth 2
jailed B2 90
known as/for sth 90
meant for / to do sth 90
off (= leave) 44
on the lookout for sth/sb 26
overcome with sth B2 90
overdrawn 32
reported to be sth C1 90
said to be sth C1 90
scheduled for sth 90
short-listed for sth 90
stranded 63
suspended from sth 90
the last thing on sb's mind 2
tied up (= busy) 2
up to sb 81
/get out of control 68
bear *v* B2 63; **can't bear sth/sb** 20
beat (= mix quickly) B2 24
beaten *as in* **off the beaten track** 36
beauty *as in* **beauty is only skin-deep** 88
beetroot 24
beforehand 44
beg B2 9
beggar *n as in* **beggars can't be choosers** 88
behaviour A2 *as in* **on your best behaviour** 23
behalf *as in* **on behalf of sb / on sb's behalf** C1 51
behind *as in* **be behind sb** B1 72
being B2 59
believe A1 *as in* **believe it or not** 84; **you're not gonna believe this** 2
bench C1 39
bend *v* B1 10
beneficial B2 3, 21
bent *adj* B2 10
bereaved 98
besides B2 75, 87
bet (= believe sth is true) B2 81; **you bet** 83; **your/the best bet** 83
betray C1 77
betrayal 77
better *as in* **be better off** 66
better late than never 88
better safe than sorry 88
better still 46
beyond B2 35

- biased** 79
- bid** *n* (= attempt) **C1** 56; (= offer) **B2** 69
- bid** *v* (= to attempt) **C1** 56; (= to offer) **B2** 69
- birth certificate** 5
- bite** *v* **B1** *as in* **bite your fingernails** 8
- bit** *n* *as in* **bits and pieces** 86
- bitter** (= sharp taste) **B2** 25
- bitterly** *as in* **bitterly cold** 28
- bizarre** **C1** 99
- black eye** 15
- blackmail** *n, v* 33
- blackmailer** 33
- blame** *n* **B2** *as in* **take the blame** 4
- bland** 25
- blank** *adj* **A2** 57
- blanket** **B2** 9
- blast** *n* **C1** 56
- blaze** *n* 60
- bleed** **C1** 15
- bleeding** 15
- blind** *adj* **B2** *as in* **(as) blind as a bat** 86
- blind** *n* (= for a window) 30
- blink** *v* 11
- blister** *n* 15
- blizzard** 28
- block** *v* 27
- blockbuster** 43
- blow** *n* (= shock/disappointment) **B2** 56
- blurred** (vision) 11
- blush** *v* 8
- board** *n* *as in* **on board** **B2** 98
- boast** *v* **C1** 16, 71; *n* 71
- bodyguard** 64
- bold** (= of people) **B2** 78
- bond** *n* **B2** 19
- bonus** (= sth good you get) **C1** 38; (= extra money) **C1** 67
- bookcase** 30
- boost** *n* **B2** 41, 56; *v* **B2** 56
- boot** (= of a car) 26
- bottle sth up** 18
- bound to do/be sth** **B2** 81
- bracelet** 29
- braise** 24
- brake** *n, v* 26; *as in* **put on the brakes** 26
- branch** (= of an organization) **B1** 55
- brand new** 73
- brave** **B1** 20
- bravery** 20, 60
- break down** 67
- break the news** 4
- breakthrough** **C1** 71
- breast cancer** 14
- breathe a sigh of relief** 12
- breed** *v* **C1** 47
- bribe** *v* 33
- bribery** 33
- brief** (description) **B2** 4
- briefly** (= for a short time; in a few words) **B2** 100
- bring** (= cause sb to reach sth) **B1** 2
- bring sb up** **B2** 22
- bring sth about** **C1** 45
- bring sth up** **C1** 82
- broad** (shoulders) **B2** 7
- broad-minded** 5
- broadcast** *n, v* **B2** 61
- broadcaster** **B2** 61
- broadly speaking** 74, 87
- broccoli** 24
- broken home** 21
- broom** 30
- browse** *v* 40
- browser** **C1** 40
- browsing** 40
- bruise** *v, n* 15
- brutal** **C1** 99
- bucket** 29
- budget** *n* **B2** 32, 37, 51; *v* 32, 37, 51
- build up** 32
- built-up** 34
- bully** *n, v* 20
- bunk bed** 30
- burst out laughing** 12
- bush** **B2** 39
- but** **A1** *as in* **but for** 84
- butcher** 64
- button** **A2** 9
- by**
- and large** 87
 - any chance** 84
 - choice** 98
 - far** 84
 - means of sth** **C1** 98
 - mutual consent** 54
 - no means** **C1** 98
 - the way** 87
- cabinet** **C1** 9
- cable** **B2** 40
- calculate** **B2** 32
- calculation** **C1** 32
- call on sb** **C1** 59
- call sth off** 82
- can opener** 25
- cancel** **B2** 82
- cancer** **B2** 14
- canteen** 25
- can't** *as in* **can't stand sth/sb** 20
- cap** (= for your head) **B1** 29
- capable** **B2** 17
- capital punishment** 54
- capitalism** **C1** 50
- capitalist** **C1** 50
- captain** **B1** 20
- care** *v* **A2** *as in* **couldn't care less (about sth/sb)** 25
- caring** *adj* 19
- carpenter** 64
- carry** *as in* **get/be carried away** 44
- carry sth out** **A2** 62
- carve** **C1** 24
- carving knife** 24
- case** (= situation) **A2** 70; **in any case** **C1** 70, 87; **in some cases** 70; **in that case** 70; **the case** (= true situation) **B1** 22
- casserole** 24
- cast** (= of a play/film) **B2** 43
- casual** (clothes) **B2** 29; (work) **C1** 64
- casualty** **C1** 27, 60
- catch** (a cold/flu) **B1** 12; **catch** (a glimpse of sth/sb) **B2** 11; **be caught up in sth** 90
- catchy** 42
- cater for sth/sb** **C1** 95
- caution** **C1** 53
- cautious** **C1** 32
- cease** **C1** 56
- ceasefire** 56
- celery** 24
- cell** (= room in prison) **B2** 54; (= smallest unit of matter) **B2** 79
- central heating** 30
- centre party** 50
- cereal** 25, 35
- certainty** **B2** 3
- chair** (a committee) *v* **B2** 51
- chairman** **B2** / **chairwoman** / **chairperson** 51
- challenge** *n* **B1** 65
- challenging** **B2** 78
- chance** **A2** *as in* **a real/good chance** 41; **by any chance** 84; **my last/big chance** 41; **no chance** 83; **take a chance (on sth)** 63
- change** *n* **A1** *as in* **a major change** 45;

- change (gear) v** **A1** 26
- channel (of communication)** 72
- chaos** **C1** 27
- chaotic** 27
- characteristic n** **B2** 22
- characteristic of sb** **B2** 22, 91
- charge v** (= run at sb) 10; **charge sth (up)** **B1** 46; **charge sb (with sth)** **B2** 53
- charger** 46
- charity** *as in charity begins at home* 88
- charm n** (= the power of pleasing or attracting people) **C1** 17; (= a pleasant or attractive quality or feature) 36
- charming** **B2** 17, 36
- chase v** **B2** 10
- check/checked (shirt)** 29
- cheek** (= on the face) **B2** 7, 13; (= rudeness) 23
- cheeky** 23
- cheer v** **B2** 12, 94; **n** **B2** 94
- chest of drawers** 30
- chief n** **B2** 56
- chief constable** 53
- chief executive** 64
- chiefly** 100
- childish** 99
- childlike** 99
- chilly** 28
- choice** **A2** *as in by choice* 98
- chop v** **B2** 24
- chorus** 42
- chubby** 7
- circumstance** **B2** 6
- cite** **B2** 57
- citizen** **B2** 51
- civil war** 47
- civil servant** 64
- civil service** 64
- civilian** **C1** 55
- clap v** 43
- clapping** 43
- clarify** **B2** 93
- classic adj** **B2** 43
- clear** (= remove) **B1** 47; clear sb (of sth) **B1** 56
- clear (sth) up** 44
- click (on sth) v** **B1** 40
- click n** 40
- climax n** 41
- climb** (= increase in value/amount) **B2** 69
- cling (to sth)** **C1** 95
- clinical** **C1** 52
- clip n** (= part of film) **B2** 61; (= for fastening) 73
- clip v** (= fasten) 73
- closely** **B2** 28; **closely-fought/contested** 58
- closure** **C1** 67
- coalition** **C1** 58
- coherence** 76
- coherent** 76
- coincide (with sth)** **C1** 95
- colander** 24
- collaborate** **C1** 92
- collaboration (with sb)** **C1** 66
- collapse** (= fall to the ground) **B2** 60; (= decrease suddenly in value) 69
- collide with sth/sb** 27
- collision** **C1** 27
- comb v** 9
- combat n** **C1** 55, 94; **v** **C1** 94
- combination** **B2** 8, 35
- come (with/in sth)** (= sold or produced with sth) **B1** 2; **come to a standstill** 28; **come top/bottom** 71
- come across (as sth)** 17
- come out** 82
- come over (as sth)** 17
- comfort** **B2** 37
- command v** (= be in charge of sth) **B2** 55
- command of sth n** (= knowledge/ability) 76
- comment n** **A2** 6, 23; **no comment** 6
- commentary** **C1** 77
- commentator** **C1** 61
- commission** **B2** 67
- committee** **B2** 51
- commodity** **C1** 57
- commonly** **B2** 14
- communicate with sb** **A2** 82
- communism** 50
- communist adj** **C1**, **n** 50
- commute v** 100
- companionship** 77
- company** (= being with people) **B1** 44
- comparable** **C1** 3, 99
- comparative** **B2** 99
- compatible** (= with people) 91; **compatible with sth/sb** (= of a computer) 97
- compelling** **C1** 42
- compensate (for sth/sb)** **C1** 82, 95
- compensation** **C1** 75
- completion** **B2** 92
- complex adj** **B1** 42
- complicate** 42
- complicated** **B2** 42
- comply (with sth)** **C1** 80
- component** **B2** 40
- compost** 39
- comprehensible** 99
- comprehensive** **B2** 99
- comprise** **B2** 55
- compromise n, v** **C1** 58
- compulsory** **B2** 55
- conceal** **C1** 7
- concentrate** **B1** 11
- concentration** **B2** 11
- concept** **B2** 100
- concern n** **B2** 34; **sb's main concern** 4
- concern v** **B2** 34
- concerned (about/for sth)** **B2** 34
- concerning prep** 58
- conclusion** **B1** 76; **in conclusion** 75
- concrete n** **B2** 80
- condemn** **C1** 76
- condemnation** 76
- condone** 76
- conduct v** (= organize an activity) **B2** 62, 79
- conduct n** **B2** 21
- confer (with sb)** **C1** 95
- confess** **B2** 82
- confidence (in sth/sb)** **B2** 17, 97
- confident** **B1** 17
- confidential** 52
- confine sb/sth in sth** **C1** 54; **be confined to sth** 48
- confinement** 54
- confirmation** **C1** 61
- conflict n** 58
- confront** **C1** 72
- congratulate sb (on sth)** **C1** 95
- connection** **B1** *as in in connection with sth* 59
- conscientious** 17
- conscious** **B2** 15
- consensus** **C1** 58
- consent n** **C1** *as in by common/mutual consent* 54
- consequently** **B2** 75
- conservation** **B2** 47
- conservatism** 50
- conservative adj, n** **B2** 50
- conserve** **C1** 46
- consider sb/sth to be sth / as sth** **B1** 23, 47
- considerable** **B2** 60

- considerate** 16
considering *prep* 75
consist of sth B1 55
consistency C1 41
consistent B2 21, 41
conspiracy B2 56
constant B2 10
constantly B2 8
constraint C1 80
construct *v* B2 80
construction B2 80; **under construction** 98
consult B2 14, 45
consultation C1 14, 45
consume B1 46
consumer B1 46
consumption B2 46
contemporary B2 73
contempt for sth/sb C1 97
contender C1 41
contest *n* B2 58
contract *n* B2 38, 70
contrast (with sth) *v* B1 62
contrary *n* C1 *as in on the contrary* 83
contribute B2 44
contribution B2 44
control *n* A2 *as in be/get out of control* 68; **under control** 68
controversial B2 78
controversy B2 78
convalesce 52
convalescence 52
convenience B2 75
convenient B1 34
convention B2 48, 77
conventional B2 48, 99
conversion C1 73
convert (sth) (into sth) B2 73
convey (sth to sb) B2 77
convict sb (of sth) C1 53
conviction (= belief) C1 79
convinced B2 43
convincing B2 43
cooperate (with sb) C1 58
cooperation 93
cooperative C1 93
cope with sth B2 21
core *adj* B2 58
corkscrew *n* 24
corporate B2 69
correspond (with sth/sb) C1 95
cosmetic surgery 52
could A1 *as in could do with sth* 83; **couldn't care less (about sth/sb)** 25
council B1 51
councillor C1 51
count *v* (= say numbers) A2 6; (= calculate a number) A2 6; (= include) B2 6
county B2 61
coup C1 69
courage B2 20, 60
courageous 20, 60
courgette 24
courteous 23
courtesy C1 23
coverage B2 62
crack *v, n* B2 12
crash *n, v* 12
crawl (= on hands and knees) C1 9; (= move slowly of traffic) 2
creamy 25
create B1 *as in create an illusion* 7
creation B2 92
credit *n* B2 *as in in credit* 32
cremate *as in be cremated* 90
crew B2 70
crisis B2 54
criterion/criteria B2 42, 76
critical (= dangerous) B2 27
criticism B2 22
criticize B2 22
crop *n* B2 35
cross (your legs) 8
crucial B2 10, 21
cure *n, v* B2 48
curiously *as in curiously enough* 100
custody (= being in prison) C1 53; (= a legal right) C1 62
customary 23
cut sth back 39
cutback *as in make cutbacks* 32
cute B2 7
daily *adv* B1 78
dairy B2 35
damaging C1 21, 72
damp *adj* 34, 40
danger A1 *as in in danger of extinction* 47
dare *v* B2 *as in don't you dare* 63
darkness B2 31; **in total darkness** 31
day-to-day 74
deadline B2 68
deadly B2 63, 99
deaf 12; **(as) deaf as a post** 86
deal *n* B1 56, 69
death toll 60
deathly 99
debate *n* B2 58
debit card 32
debt B2 32
deceive 82
decent (= honest and fair) B2 16; (= good enough quality) B2 34
decisive C1 16
decline *v, n* B2 47
decorate B1 38
decorating 38
decorative 47
dedicate yourself to sth 20
dedicated to sb/sth C1 97
deep A2 35
deep *as in in a deep sleep* 31
deep-fat fryer 24
deep-fry 24
deeply B2 23
deer 11
defeat *n* B2 41
defect *n* C1 79
defective 79
defence B2 62
defend B2 62
defensive C1 8
defiant 77
deficit C1 32
defy C1 77
degree (= certain amount/level of sth) B2 66
delegate (sth to sb) 68
deliberate B2 60
deliberately B2 60
delicate C1 61, 63
delight *n* 36
delighted B2 18
delightful 36
deliver (= give a message, etc.) B1 42
delivery B2 42
demanding 10
demonstrate (= protest) 59; (= show) B2 78
demonstration B2 59
demonstrator 59
denial C1 92
dense (fog) C1 28
dental 67
deny B2 92
department A2 65
dependent on sb/sth B2 28, 97

- depending on sb/ sth **B1** 78
- depict **C1** 77
- deposit *n* **B2** 38, 94; *v* **C1** 94
- depressed **B2** 18, 34
- depressing **B2** 34
- depression **B2** 18
- deprivation 21
- deprive sb (of sth) **C1** 21, 95
- deprived 21
- deserve **B2** 62, 78
- desirable **C1** 34
- desire *n* **B2** 49
- desperate **B2** 18
- desperation 18
- despise 20
- destructive **C1** 93
- detailed (description) **B2** 4
- detain **C1** 53
- detect **B2** 92
- detection **C1** 92
- deter 54
- deteriorate **C1** 71
- determine **B2** 42
- determination 43
- deterrent 54
- detest 20
- devastate **C1** 60
- devastated 18
- devastation 60
- device **A2** 73
- devise **C1** 10
- devote sth (to sth/ sb) **B2** 95
- diabetes 14
- diagnose **C1** 48
- diagnosis **C1** 48
- diagnostic 48
- die out 47
- differ (from sth/sb) **B2** 95
- differentiate **C1** 55
- dig *v* **B2** 39
- dignified 20
- dignity **C1** 20
- directly **B1** 63
- disadvantage **B1** 34
- disapproval 20
- disapprove of sb/sth 20
- disapproving 1
- disaster **A2** 81
- discard **C1** 14
- discharge sb (from hospital) **C1** 52
- discipline **B2** 33
- disclose **C1** 18
- discomfort 11
- discourteous 23
- discrimination **C1** 49
- discussion **A2** *as in* under discussion 98
- disgust *n* 18
- disgusted 18
- dislike *n* **B1** *as in* take an instant/immediate dislike to sb 19
- dislocate 15
- disloyal 91
- dismiss **B2** 65, 92
- dismissal **C1** 92
- disobedience 59
- disobedient 91
- disorder **B2** 14
- display *v* **B2** 8, 78; *n* 8
- disposable 44
- disposal **C1** 46
- dispose of sth **C1** 46, 95
- dispute *n* **C1** 67, 94; *v* **C1** 94
- disruption **C1** 28, 59
- disruptive 66
- dissatisfied 71
- dissolve **C1** 14
- distinction **C1** *as in* make a distinction 55
- distinguish (between people or things) **B2** 55; distinguish sth/sb (from sth/sb) **B2** 95
- distract sb (from sth) **B2** 95
- distress *n* **C1** 20, 61
- distribute **B2** 50
- distribution **B2** 50
- district **B2** 34
- disturb **B2** 31
- disturbing **C1** 99
- dive (= into water) **B2** 9
- diverse **B2** 36, 55, 66
- diversification 70
- diversify 70
- diversity **B2** 55
- divert sth/sb (from sth) **C1** 47
- divide **B2** 58
- division **B2** 58
- do (= be enough/ acceptable) **B2** 2; do sb a favour 6; do sb good 87; do sth at the last minute 74
- domestic (= of animals) **B2** 73
- dominance **C1** 58
- dominant **B2** 41, 58
- dominate 41
- domination 41
- don't *as in* don't ask me 83; don't judge a book by its cover 88; don't you dare 63
- donor **C1** 48
- doorbell 30
- dosage 14
- dose **C1** 14
- doubt *n* **B1** *as in* no doubt 81
- downpour 28
- downwards **B2** 23, 40
- dozen **B2** 30
- draft *n, v* **B2** 94
- drag *v* **B2** 9
- drain *v* **C1** 24
- draw *v* **B2** *as in* draw sb's attention to sth 7
- drawback 34
- drawer 30
- dream *n* **A2** *as in* a dream come true 84
- dressing 15
- dress up 29
- drift into sth 33
- dripping 30
- driving licence 5
- drop out (of sth) 71
- drought **B2** 28
- drown **C1** 61
- dry *adj* **A2** *as in* (as) dry as a bone 86
- dubbed **C1** 43
- dull (= of weather) **C1** 28
- dustbin 30
- dynamic **B2** 16, 71
- dynamism 71
- early *adj* **A1** *as in* an early night 44
- earth *as in* what, etc. on earth 84
- earth tremor 60
- ease *v* **C1** 11
- easy *as in* take it easy 36
- eco- (abbreviation of ecology) 46
- economize 32
- ecstatic 18
- edit (a film, etc.) 61; (= prepare for publication) **B2** 92
- edited 61
- edition **B2** 92
- educational **B1** 93
- efficiency **C1** 17
- efficient **B2** 17
- effort **B1** *as in* make an effort 4
- egg **A1** *as in* put all your eggs in one basket 88

- electorate** 58
electrician 64
elegant B2 29
eligible C1 51
eliminate B2 11
elimination 11
elsewhere B2 65
embark on sth 95
embody C1 77
emerge (= become known) B2 62; (= come out of a hidden place) B2 62; (= start to exist) B2 62
emergence of sth/sb C1 97
emigrate 49
emigration 49
eminent 99
empirical C1 79
empower C1 as in be empowered to do sth 90
en suite 38
enable sb to do sth B2 37, 48
enclosed 14
encompass C1 55
encounter v (= experience sth difficult) B2 66; (= meet unexpectedly) B2 42
encounter n B2 42
encounter v B2 66
encouragement C1 92
end n as in in the end A2 87; the end justifies the means 88
end up (doing sth) B1 47
endangered 47
endless C1 68
endure C1 63
energetically 13
energy-saving 46
enforce C1 45
enforcement C1 45
engage (= interest/attract) B2 42
enhance B2 7
enlist 55
enlisted 55
enough as in strangely/oddly/curiously enough 100
enrol on sth C1 52
ensure B2 51
enterprise C1 66
enthusiasm B2 16
enthusiastic B2 16
entire B2 59
entirely B2 100
entitle (sb to sth) C1 67
entrance hall 38
entrepreneur B2 64
equivalent to sth adj B2 97
era B2 48
eradicate 48
erect C1 59
escalate C1 72
essential B1 10
essentially B2 38, 100
establish (= start or create sth) B2 31; (= discover or prove the facts of a situation) B2 42
estate B2 61
estimate n B2, v B2 30, 73
ethic B2 16
ethical B2 16
ethnic B2 49
evacuate C1 60
evacuation 60
evaluate B2 76
evaluation B2 76
even as in even so 87
ever as in ever since B2 63
evidently 100
evil adj B2 77, 99; n B2 77
evolution B2 45
evolve B2 45
exact adj A2 1
exaggerate C1 7, 72
exaggeration 7
example B1 as in set an example 4
exceed (= do more than you are allowed to do; be greater than a particular number/amount) B2 14
excellent A1 78
exception as in take exception to sth 23; with the exception of sth/sb C1 97
exceptional C1 23, 99
excess C1 14
excessive B2 80
exclude sb (from sth) B2 95
exclusive C1 37
exclusively C1 54
executive n B2 64
exemplify 93
exhausted 31
exit (= of a motorway) n B2, v C1 27
expectation B2 43
expenditure C1 32
expense B2 37
experimental C1 79
expire C1 14
expiry date 14
exploit C1 70
exploitation C1 70
exploration B2 76
explore B2 76
expose (= show sth that is hidden) B2 62; (= tell the true facts about sth) B2 77
exposure to sth B2 97
extend B2 38
extended (= of a building) C1, (= of a piece of writing) 76
extension 38
extensive B2 27
extent B2 as in to a large extent 85; to some extent 50
exterior 30, 38
external adj B2 40
extinct 47
extinction 47
extract n B2 94
extract sth (from sb) v 94
extraordinary B2 74
extreme B2 50
extremism 50
extremist n C1, adj 50
extrovert n, adj 16
eye n as in an eye for an eye 88; eye contact 8; eye strain 11
eyebrow 13
eyesight 11
eyewitness 27
fabulous B2 43
face n as in a familiar face 4
face up to sth 72
facilitate C1 45
failure B2 71
fair enough 100
faith B2 49
fall v B1 as in fall asleep 31
fame B2 20
fancy dress 29
fancy sb B1 8; fancy (doing) sth B1 44
far as in by far 84
fast adv B2 as in fast asleep 31
fatal C1 14
fate C1 77
fattening 25
fault n B2 19
faulty 79
favour n (= sth that helps sb) B1 6; be in favour (of sth/sb) B1 50
favour v B2 50
favourable 99
feature n (= part of face/body) B1 7

- feedback** B2 70
- fellow** *adj* B2 62
- feminist** *adj* C1 77
- fertile** 39
- figurative** 1
- figure** (= body) 7
- filter** *n, v* C1 94
- filthy** 34
- finance** *n* B2 65
- final** *adj* A1 *as in a final resort* 84
- financial** B1 65
- findings** B2 62
- fingertip** 13
- fire** *v* (= dismiss) B1 65
- fire brigade** 60
- firefighter** 60
- firm** *n* B2 70
- firmly** B2 13
- first aid** 15
- first** *adv as in first and foremost* 85; *first come, first served* 88
- fit** *as in clenched fist* 8
- fit in (with sb/sth)** 66
- flash** *n* B2 28
- flatmate** 38
- flattering** 7
- flee** C1 49
- flexibility** C1 37
- flexible** B2 37
- flip-flop** *n* 29
- flirt (with sb)** 8
- float** (= in water) B2 61; (= suggest an idea) 69
- flood** (= water) B1 68; (= a large quantity of sth) B2 68
- flourish** C1 71
- flourishing** 36
- foil** *v* 56
- fold** *v* B1 9; *fold your arms* 8
- follow** *as in follow in sb's footsteps* 22
- food processor** 24
- foot** *as in put your feet up* 39; *put your foot in it* 23
- footstep** 12
- for** *as in for my part* 49; *for some reason* 84 *for the most part* 49; *for the time being* 74
- forehead** 13
- forgive** B2 19
- formally** 61
- former** B2 69, 73
- formerly** B2 73
- fortunate** B2 73
- fortune** B2 62
- forward planning** 71
- foster** (= help/develop) C1 66
- found** *v* B2 70
- foundation(s)** (= of a building) C1 80
- founder** *n* B2 70
- fracture** *v* 15
- fragment** *n* B2 61
- framework** B2 80
- frankly** C1 100
- fraud** B2 33
- free** *as in free of charge* 52
- freelance** *adj, adv* 66
- freeze** *v* (= of a computer) 40
- frequency** B2 35
- frequent** B2 35
- fresh** (= new) B2 69
- fringe benefit** 67
- frog** A2 39
- from** *as in from time to time* 74
- fruity** 25
- frustrated** *adj* C1 68
- frying pan** 24
- fulfil** B2 66
- fulfilling** 66
- full** *as in in full* C1 98
- fully-booked** 37
- functional** C1 93
- fundamental** 55
- funding** B2 51
- funds** *n* B2 47
- furnished** 38
- furthermore** B2 75
- future** *n* A1 *as in in the near future* B2 98
- gain (wisdom)** B2 21
- gale** 28
- gallop** 63
- gang** B2 33
- gap** *as in gap in the market* 70
- gatecrasher** 44
- gaze at sth/sb** 11
- gear** C1 26
- generalization** *as in make generalizations* 8
- generally speaking** 74
- generate** B2 46
- generous** B1 37
- genre** B2 42
- gently** 13
- genuine** (= real) B2 73; (= showing what you think) B2 16
- gesture** 8
- get**
- (back) to sleep** 31
- (sb/sth to do sth)** 2
- away from it** all 36
- away with sth** 66
- carried away** 44
- going** (= start to become enjoyable) 44
- hold of sth** 30
- in the way of sth** 66
- on as in be getting on for sth** 7
- out of sth** 2
- over sth** 82
- sb down** 72
- somewhere/nowhere** 71
- sth across** 82
- the credit** 4
- the sack** 65
- there** (= achieve your aim) 83
- through (to sb)** 82
- through sth** 82
- ghost story** 43
- giant** *adj* B1, *n* B2 98
- ginger** 24
- girder** 80
- give** *as in give or take* 89; *give sb a hug/tap, etc* 13; *give sb a lift* 81; *give sb the sack* 65
- give in** 67
- given (that)** 37
- glamorous** 7, 29
- glance at sth/sb** 11
- glimpse** *n* C1 11
- go**
- away** (= on holiday) A2 37
- downhill** 71
- for a stroll** 10
- from strength to strength** 71
- hiking** 10
- in one ear and out the other** 83
- off** (= leave a place) B2 81
- off** (= ring) B2 31
- on** (= happening) 34
- on** (= continue without changing) 34
- on** (= of time: pass) 34
- red** 8
- through (a phase)** 21
- through sth** (= examine sth; experience sth; perform a series of actions) 82
- to sleep** 31
- go-ahead** *n* 56
- golden (opportunity)** B2 1

- good** *adj* as in (as) good as gold 86; (as) good as new 73; good of sb (to do sth) 44
- good** *n* as in do sb good 85
- goodness** as in goodness knows 83
- gorgeous** B2 7
- govern** B2 58
- grab** *v* B2 13; **grab sb's attention** 57
- graffiti** 34
- grand** *adj* B2 37
- grant** *n* B2 51
- grant (bail)** *v* B2 53
- grapefruit** 24
- grass** *n* A2 as in the grass is always greener (on the other side) 88
- grate** *v* 24
- grater** 24
- greasy** 25, 30
- greed** 20
- greedy** 20
- green** *adj* B1 51
- greenhouse** B2 39
- grounds (for sth/doing sth)** B2 53
- group therapy** 54
- growing** *adj* 72
- guarantee** *n* B2 37, 66; *v* B2 37, 66
- guaranteed** *adj* 66
- guard** *n* B1; *v* B1 55
- guess** *v* as in guess what 84
- guest house** 37
- guidance** C1 3
- guidelines** B2 3, 7
- habitat** B2 47
- had** as in had better B2 44
- half** A1 as in in half 9; half a dozen 30
- halt** *v* C1 67
- hand** *v* as in hand in your notice 65
- handle (emotions, etc.)** B2 18
- handling** C1 3
- handy** C1 34
- handyman** 64
- hang around/about** 34
- hang on** B2 83
- hard** *adj* A1 as in it's hard to say 22
- hard-wearing** 5
- harsh** C1 33
- hate** *v* A1, *n* B1 94
- have** as in have a (good) laugh 44; have a part to play (in sth) 49; have second thoughts (about sth) 2; have sth/sb in mind C1 83; having said that 37
- hay fever** 14
- hazard** *n* C1 26, 54
- hazardous** 26
- head** *n* (= of an organization) A2 51
- head** *v* (= be in charge) B1 51
- headlight** 26
- heal** B2 15
- health care** 52
- heart** B1 as in a heart of gold 1
- heart attack** 14
- heartbroken** 18
- heat (sth) (up)** 25
- heatwave** 28
- heaven** B2 62
- heavy (sleeper)** B1 31
- hedge** *n* 39
- heighten** C1 93
- helicopter** B1 27, 55
- hell** (= in religion) B2; (= a very unpleasant experience) B2; (= a swear word) 62
- hen party** 29
- hence** 75
- herb** B2 24
- herd** B2 35
- hereditary** 79
- heredity** 79
- hero** A2 20
- heroic** 20
- heroine** 20
- heroism** 20
- hesitate** B2 92
- hesitation** 92
- hideous** 7
- high** as in a high profile 51
- high-heeled shoe** 29
- hike** *v* 10
- hindsight** as in with hindsight 74
- hit (single)** *n* A2 42
- hit** *v* B1 60
- hold** *n* as in on hold 98
- hollow** B2 39
- holy** B2 16
- home** as in at home (= playing sport) 41
- homeless** *adj* B2 34
- honest** B1 as in to be (perfectly) honest 100
- honour** *n* B2 as in in honour of sb/sth 98
- hoover** *n, v* 30
- hopeless** 71
- horizontal** 7
- horn** C1 12
- host** *n* B1 44
- hostess** 44
- hostile** (= unfriendly) C1 49; (= in business) 69
- hostility** 49
- household** 3
- housewife/ househusband** 64
- housing** B2 3
- how** as in How come? 83; how dare you 63
- however** as in however much/hard, etc. 22
- hug** *v, n* 13
- human being** 59
- human race** 3
- human resources** 65
- humanitarian** C1 3
- humanity** C1 3
- humid** 28
- humidity** 28
- humorous** B2 23
- hundreds (of sth)** A1 15
- hunting** B2 56
- hypothesis** B2 79
- I** as in I couldn't care less 25; I haven't the faintest idea 83; I mean A2 81; I wouldn't mind 84
- icon** B2 40
- identity card** 5
- ideological** C1 50
- ideology** C1 50
- idiot** C1 17
- idiotic** 17
- if** as in if all else fails 84; if only B2 84; if you don't/wouldn't mind 84
- ignore** B1 32
- illustrate** B2 76
- illustration** B2 76
- imaginative** 78
- immature** 17
- immediate** *adj* B1 as in take an immediate dislike to sb 19
- immigrant** B1 49
- immigration** B2 49
- imminent** C1 69
- immune system** 79
- immune to sth** B2 97
- immunity** 79
- impact** *n* B1 21
- implement** *v* B2 45
- implementation** C1 45
- implication** C1 77
- imply** B2 77
- impose sth on/upon** 45

impress **B2** 23, 37
 impressed **B2** 23
 impressive **B1** 37
 imprison **C1** 54
 imprisonment **C1** 54

in

a deep sleep 31
 a minute 83
 a row 41
 a whisper 12
 advance 37
 any case **C1** 70, 87
 conclusion 75
 connection with sth **C1** 59
 credit 32
 danger (of extinction) **A2** 47
 decline 47
 excess of sth 14
 favour of sb/sth **B1** 50
 full **C1** 98
 half 9
 honour of sth/sb 98
 office 98
 part **B2** 49
 place **B2** 15
 possession of sth 98
 power 98
 reserve 55
 retrospect 74
 some cases **A2** 70
 tears 12, 18
 that case 70
 the end **A2** 87
 the middle of nowhere 37
 the near future **B2** 98
 the public eye 62
 the public interest 61
 the region of sth 89
 the short/medium/long term 46

the wake of sth **C1** 69
 total darkness 31
 view of sth 75
 your own time 21
 inability **C1** 14
 inaccurate 1
 inadequate **C1** 75
 inappropriate **C1** 1
 incapable 91
 incentive **B2** 21, 64
 inch *n* **B2** 63, 74
 incident **B2** 27, 77
 incidentally 87
 inclined to do sth **C1** 67
 inclusion **C1** 3
 inclusive 3
 incoherent 76
 income **B2** 32
 incompatible 91
 incomprehensible 99
 Inconsiderate 16
 inconsistent 41
 inconvenience 75
 increasingly **B2** 35
 incredible **A2** 74
 ineligible 51
 inevitable **B2** 19
 infamous **C1** 99
 infect **C1** 48
 infection **B2** 15, 48
 infectious 15, 48
 inflexible 37
 influential **C1** 21
 inform **B2** 52
 infrequent 35
 inherent (in sth) **C1** 77, 97
 inherit (qualities/features) **B2** 22; (money/land) **B2** 77
 inheritance 77
 inhuman 91
 initial *adj* **B2** 19
 initially **B2** 19

initiative **B2** 66
 inmate **C1** 54
 inner (city) **B2** 34
 innovate 70
 innovation **B2** 70
 innovative **B2** 70, 73
 inoffensive 1, 23
 insert (sth into sth) **B2** 79, 80
 insertion **C1** 79
 inside lane 27
 insight (into sth) **B2** 66
 insignificant 72
 insist (on sth/doing sth) **B2** 95
 insoluble 72
 insomnia 31
 inspect **C1** 92
 inspection **C1** 79
 inspector **B2** 53
 inspiration **C1** 20
 inspirational 20
 inspire **B2** 20
 install **B2** 40
 installation 40
 instance **B2** 47
 instant (food) *adj* **B2** 25; take an instant dislike to sb 19
 Instantly **B2** 57
 Institute **B2** 54
 institution **B2** 54
 insufficient **C1** 91
 insult *n, v* **C1** 1
 insulting 1
 insurance **B2** 65
 integration (into sth) **C1** 49
 integrity **C1** 16
 intended (for sth) **B2** 39
 intense **B2** 18, 60
 intensify **C1** 93
 intensity **C1** 60

intent on/upon sth / doing sth 97
 intentional 60
 interact (with sb) **B2** 95
 interfere (in sth) **C1** 71
 interference **C1** 71
 interior *n* **C1** 38
 internal **B2** 40
 interpret **B2** (= explain the meaning of sth) **B2** 1; (= decide that sth has a particular meaning) **B2** 8
 interpretation **B2** 1, 8
 Interrupt **B2** 68
 introvert *n, adj* 16
 introverted *adj* 16
 invalid 91
 invariably 100
 Invest in sth **B1** 70
 investigation **B2** *as in* under investigation 98
 investment (= sth worth buying) **B2** 46; (= investing money) **B2** 70
 invisible **C1** 11
 involvement (in sth) **C1** 97
 ironic **C1** 1
 ironically **C1** 1
 ironing board 30
 Irony **C1** 1
 irrational 77
 irrelevant **C1** 42
 irreplaceable 3
 irritable 31
 irritate 11
 irritating 12
 irritation 11
 isolated **B2** 35
 isolation **C1** 35
 issue *v* (a fine, etc.) **B2** 53; (= make a statement) **B2** 69
 it's *as in* it's a small world 88; it's about/high time 74; it's hard to say 22; it's true (that ...) 87

- jail** v **B2** *as in* **be jailed** 90
- jaw** 13
- jeweller** 64
- jewellery** **A2** 64
- job** *as in* **be a good job** 84
- joy** 18
- joyful** 18
- judge** v **B1** *as in* **don't judge a book by its cover** 88
- judgement** **B2** 23
- juicy** 25
- jump** v *as in* **jump to conclusions** 8
- junction** **C1** 27
- junior** 52
- junk food** 5
- justice** (= the fair treatment of people; the legal system) **B2** 54
- justifiable** 54
- justification** **C1** 54, 76
- justify** **B2** 37, 54, 76
- keep** (= remain fresh) 2; **keep (animals)** 35; **keep sth a secret** 4
- keep ahead (of sb)** 70
- kerb** 26
- kettle** 9
- key sth (in)** **B1** 40
- key to sth** *n* (= an important thing) 7
- kid** v *as in* **you're kidding** 83
- kidnap** **C1** 33, 56
- kidnapper** 33, 56
- kidnapping** 33
- kilt** 29
- kind of** 89
- kitchen scales** 24
- kneel down** 9
- know** v **A1** *as in* **be known as/for sth** **B1** 90; **you never know** 81, 84
- knowledgeable** 17
- labour** *n* (= people who work) **B2** 35
- labourer** 35
- lacking (in sth)** *adj* 17
- land** v **A2** 74
- landfill** 46
- landlady** 38
- landlord** **C1** 38
- lane** (= road) **B2** 27
- lap** **C1** 25
- largely** **B2** 38
- last** *adj* **A1** *as in* **a last resort** 84
- last** v (= continue; be enough) **A2** 71
- last-minute** 5
- lasting** *adj* 74
- late** *adj* *as in* **a late night** 44; (= no longer alive) 22
- laugh** *n* *as in* **have a (good) laugh** 44
- launch** v (= start a computer program) **B2** 40; (= start an activity) **B2** 40, 70
- law and order** 86
- lawnmower** 39
- laze around/about** 36
- lead** *n, v* **B1** 94
- leadership** **B2** 69
- leaflet** **B2** 14
- league** **B2** 41
- lean (towards sb)** **B2** 8
- lean against sth** **B2** 9
- lean** *adj* 25
- lease** *n* 38
- leave sth to/with sb** **B2** 2; **leave sth to/till the last minute** 74
- leave** *n* (= holiday) **B2** 67
- left-wing** 50
- legalize** 93
- lemon-squeezer** 24
- lentil** 24
- let me see/think** 83
- let sb down** 71
- letter box** 30
- liable to sth** **C1** 97
- liberal** *adj, n* **C1** 50
- liberalism** 50
- librarian** 64
- lick** v 23
- lie-in** *as in* **have a lie-in** 31
- life expectancy** 5
- lifeboat** 70
- lift** *n* **B1** *as in* **give sb a lift** 81
- light** *adj* **A2** *as in* **(as) light as a feather** 86
- light sleeper** 31
- lightly** 13
- like** *prep* **A1** *as in* **like me/you/him, etc.** 81
- likelihood** **C1** 3, 47
- limitation (on sth)** **B2** 97
- literal** 1
- literally** **B2** 1
- litter** **B2** 34
- live** v **A1** *as in* **live in peace** 49
- lively** **B2** 16, 34
- liven sth up** 44
- live stream** *n* 61
- live-stream** v 61
- living** *n* (= money you earn) **B1** 35
- load** v **B2** 27
- load** *n* (= sth being carried) **B2** 27; (= the amount of weight/pressure) 80; **loads (of sth)** 89
- loan** *n* **B2** 70
- loathe** 20
- lock sb up** 54
- loft** 38
- log** **C1** 27
- logic** **C1** 93
- logical** **B2** 93
- long-lived** 79
- long-standing** **C1** 5
- long-term** **B2** 14
- loo** 30
- look back (on sth)** 74
- look out for sth/sb** 8
- look up** (= improve) 19
- look up to sb** 20, 82
- lookout** *as in* **be on the lookout for sb/sth** 26
- loose-fitting** 29
- loosen** 93
- lord** (= a title) **B2** 61; the Lords 56
- lose** *as in* **lose face** 84; **lose your temper** 20
- love** *n* **A1** *as in* **love is blind** 88
- lower** *adj* 63
- loyal** **B2** 91
- loyalty card** 5
- luck** **A2** *as in* **(the) best of luck** 83
- lucrative** 64
- lump** 14
- lung cancer** 14
- luxurious** 37
- luxury** **B1** 37
- lyrics** **B2** 42
- magistrate** **C1** 53
- magnificent** **B2** 73
- main** **A1** *as in* **sb's main concern** 4
- maintain** (= in good condition) **B2** 39; (= at a certain standard) **B2** 60
- maintenance** **C1** 39
- major (change)** **A2** 45
- majority** **B2** 58
- make**
(= think or calculate) 2
- a distinction** 55
- a note of sth** 68
- a speedy recovery** 63
- an effort** 4
- cutbacks** 32
- generalizations** 8

- it (= various meanings) 81
sth of sb 17
sb feel welcome 44
sb redundant 65
sb/sth do sth 81
sth/sb out 11
up (= comprise) 55
up (for sth/sb) 95
up for sth 82
- make-up** B2 7
mango 24
manifesto 51
manners A2 23
manslaughter 33
manual *adj* 26, 64
manufacture B2 70
manufacturer 70
manufacturing B2 65
march *v* C1 10, 29
market *n* B1 *as in* on the market 38
market research 65
mass *adj, n* B2 57; **mass-market** 57
massage *v, n* 13
massive B2 27
mat 30
matching B2 29
mate *n, v* B2 94
maternity 67
matter *as in* as a matter of fact 84; **no matter what/how, etc.** B2 68
mature *adj* (of behaviour) C1 17; (= fully grown) C1 39
maximize C1 93
may *as in* may as well do sth 83
mayor B2 51
meadow 35
mean *v* *as in* be meant for / to do sth 90
mean *adj* (= wanting to keep money) 37; (= unpleasant) 19
means (of sth / doing sth) B2 50; **by means of sth, by no means** 98
measurement B2 92
mechanism B2 73
medium *adj* B1 25
meet (the needs of sb/sth) B2 80
melody C1 42
memorable B2 42
mention *v* A2 *as in* not to mention C1 84
mercy C1 77
merger C1 69
merit *n* C1 78
merry *as in* the more the merrier 88
mess *n* 81; **make a mess of sth** 81
metaphor B2 1
metaphorical 1
middle *n* A2 *as in* in the middle of nowhere 37
might *as in* might as well do sth 83
migrant 49
migration C1 49
mild (weather) B1 28
military *n, adj* B2 55
military service 55
mind *n* A2 *as in* my mind is like a sieve 86; **be in two minds about sth** 2; **have sth in mind** 83; **my mind is/goes a complete blank** 83; **on my mind** 31
mind *v* *as in* mind you 85
mineral B2 48
minimize C1 59
minimum *adj* B2 67
minister B2 56
minor *adj* B2 14, 72
minority (= within a community) B2 49
minute *n* A1 *as in* (at) any minute (now) 81; **do sth at the last minute** 74; **in a minute, the minute (that ...)** 83
miscalculate 91
miserable (= making you feel very unhappy or uncomfortable) B2 37; (= very unhappy or uncomfortable) B2 52
misery C1 20
misinterpret 8
misjudge 91
mislead 91
missile C1 55
mission 59
mist 11
mistake sb/sth for sb/sth 3
mistreat 91
misty 11
misunderstand 91
mix *v* B1 24
mixed *as in* mixed farming 35; **mixed feelings** 35; **mixed race** 35
moderate *adj* C1, *n* 50
modernize 93
modify B2 73
molecular 79
molecule 79
moment A1 *as in* at a moment's notice 98
money A1 *as in* put money into sth, take money out 32
monitor *v* B2 46
monthly *adv* 78
moon *as in* over the moon 18
mop *n* 29
moral *adj* B2 33
morals *n* B2 33
more *as in* more or less B2 87
moreover B2 75
mortgage *n* B2 38
mother tongue 5
motion B2 80
motivated 10, 17
motivation B2 10, 17
mount *v* B2 69
mount up 32
movement B2 59
mow (the lawn) 39
mud B1 39
muddy 39
mug *n* 25
mug *v* 33
mugger 33
mugging 33
multiple *adj* B2 58
multiply B2 72
mutate 79
mutation 79
mutual C1 66
mysterious B2 63
mysteriously 63
naked B2 99
nap *n* *as in* have a nap 31
narrative *n* B1 76
narrator 76
narrow *adj* A2 7; **a narrow escape** 4
narrow-minded 5
nasty B2 19
native *adj* B1 49
nature (= character) B1 21; (= physical world) A2 39
near *adj* B1 *as in* in the near future B2 98
nearby B2 34
necessarily *as in* not necessarily B1 8
neglect *n, v* C1 33
negotiate B2 58
negotiation B2 58
nerves B2 68
nest C1 39
network B1 61

- nevertheless **B2** 35, 75, 87
news **A1** *as in* no news is good news 88
next to (nothing) 73
nightdress/nightie 31
nightmare (= bad dream) **B2** 12, 31; (= bad experience) **B2** 12
no *as in* no comment 6; no way **A2**, no chance 83; no matter what/how, etc. **B2** 68; no wonder 84
nod *v* **C1** 9
nominate **C1** 78
nomination **C1** 78
nonetheless **C1** 75
nostalgia 49
nostalgic 49
not *as in* not necessarily **B1** 8; not to mention **C1** 84
note *n* **A1** *as in* make a note of sth 68
note sth down 68
notice *n* **B1** *as in* take no notice of sb/sth 52
noticeable 3
notify **C1** 61
notion (of sth) **B2** 23
notorious **C1** 99
now *as in* now and again 85; now and then 85
nowadays **B2** 64
numerous **B2** 60
number plate 26
nurture *n, v* 21
nut **A2** 24
obedient 91
object *v* **B2** 92
objection **C1** 92
objective *adj* **B2** 79
objectivity 79
obligatory 55
oblige **C1** 75
observant 8
observation **B2** 8
observe **B2** 8
obstacle **B2** 71
obvious **B1** 22, 45
occasionally **B2** 35
occupational *as in* occupational hazard 35
occupy (= enter a place and take control of it) **C1**, (= fill or use a space / an amount of time) **B2**, (= live or work in a room, etc.) **C1** 59
occur **B1** 79
odd *adj* (= approximately) 89; (= not regular or fixed) 28
oddly *as in* oddly enough 100
odds and ends 85
off *adv* **A2** *as in* be off (= leave) 44
off *as in* off the beaten track 36; off the top of my head 83
offence (= a crime) **B2** 53; take offence (at sth) 23
offender **B2** 33
offensive *adj* **B2** 1, 23
office **B2** *as in* in office 98
official *adj* **B1** 91
- On**
a daily/weekly basis 68
and off 85
behalf of sb / on sb's behalf **C1** 51
board **B2** 98
good/friendly/bad, etc. terms (with sb) 98
hold 98
my mind 31
purpose 98
standby 46
the alert 26
the basis of sth **B2** 98
the contrary 83
the market 38
the part of sb / on sb's part **C1** 57
the whole 34, 87
once *as in* at once **B2** 98; once bitten, twice shy 88
one *as in* one (thing) at a time 68
ongoing **B2** 45, 47
only *as in* only just 11
open-minded 5
open-plan 38
opening (= beginning; the act of making sth open; a small hole) **B2** 57
operating theatre 48
operation (= surgery) **B1** 48; (= organized activity) **B2** 55
opponent **B2** 41
oppose **B2** 50
opposed to sth **B2** 50
opposite *n* **A1** *as in* the exact/complete opposite 4
opposition **B2** 50
opt for sth **C1** 37
optician 11
optional 55
or *as in* or so **B2** 89; or something/somewhere, etc. 89; or thereabouts 89
organ (= of the body) **B2** 48
origin **B2** *as in* country of origin 49
originality 43
otherwise **B2** 57, 75
out *as in* out of date 73; out of respect (for sb) 98; out of touch (with sth) 98; out of work 65
outcome **B2** 69
outfit **B2** 29
outgoings 32
outline *v, n* **B2** 76
outside *n* **A2** 30
outskirts 35
outstanding (= excellent) **B2** 23, 78, 99
over *as in* over the moon 18
overall *adv* **B2** 38
overcharge 91
overcome (a problem) **B2** 71, 72, 82; be overcome with sth **C1** 90
overdo 91
overdraw *as in* be overdrawn 32
overestimate *v* 41, 91
overhear 12
oversleep 31
overtake 26
overweight 7
overwhelmed (by sth) **C1** 68
overwhelming **C1** 68
owe **B2** 32; owe sb a favour 6
own up to sth 82
ownership **B2** 50
pace **B2** 21, 57; at your own pace 21
pacify 93
packaging 73
packed lunch 25
panel (= group of specialists) **B2** 78; (= piece of metal, glass, etc) **B2** 80
panic *n* **B2**, *v* 63
parachute 55
parental **C1** 33
part **A1** 66; have a part to play (in sth) 44; in part **B2** 49; on the part (of sb) / on sb's part **C1** 57
participant (in sth) **B2** 52
partly **B2** 50
partnership **B2** 70
pass *v* *as in* pass the buck 4
pass away/on 22
pass sth on 35

<https://denokala.com>

<https://denokala.com>

<https://denokala.com>

<https://denokala.com>

<https://denokala.com>

<https://denokala.com>

<https://denokala.com>

<https://denokala.com>